CAMBRIDGE HINDI GRAMMAR

By

JAGDISH CHANDRA SHASTRI, M.A.
KAVYATIRTH, HINDI PRABHAKAR
SENIOR HINDI MASTER
St. Andrew's Colonial Homes. Kalimpong.

SHARDA MANDIR,
Publishers & Book-sellers.
DELHI.

Published by :—
Sharda Mandir,
Egerton Road,
DELHI.





Printed by :—
Shiva Nand Sharma,
at Adarsh Printing Press.
DELHI.

To
All Those Foreigners
Who Love My Mother Tongue
Hindi

Kalimpong,
May 14, 1939

—J. C. S.

Note on the second Edition:

I am pleased that Mr Shastri has found time to make a thorough revision of the "Cambridge Hindi Grammar" for this new Edition. Since he wrote it, he has gained much experience at this school and good Indian Public Schools in preparing boys for the Cambridge School Certificate Examinations All that I wrote in the original Foreword about the importance of Hindi teaching in European Schools, should be doubly stressed now when H. M. G. has declared its intention to hand the Government of this country over to the Indians by June 1948. It will now be essential that all the pupils in these Schools should be bilingual, having equal facilities in the use of English and a Vernacular I go so far as to suggest that some of the contents of the carriculam should be taught in the medium Hindi; starting say with Indian History. This new orientation will create a demand for good Hindi Text Books, and I have

much pleasure in recommending this new Edition for use in European Schools and by all keen students in Hindi.

J. T. LLOYD.
B. A. (Hons.), E. D.
Headmaster,
St. Andrew's Colonial Homes,
Kalimpong.

6-3-47

FOREWORD

FIRST EDITION.

I have much pleasure in writing a foreword to this book, entitled "Cambridge Hindi Grammar," compiled by Mr. Jagdish Chandra Shastri, the Senior Hindi Master at the St. Andrew's Colonial Homes' School.

Gone are the days when the teaching of a vernaqular was considered of little importance in European Schools and when greater attention was given to Latin and French. Educational Departments are now insisting on every pupil acquiring a sound knowledge of a vernacular and rightly so, for most of our pupils have to live their lives in India and mix with Indians and without an Indian Language they start life with a great handicap. Leaders of the Anglo-Indian community are equally insistent on this, for they realize that their children must be able to hold their own among Indians and on an equal footing, and so they must have a sound working knowledge of the vernaqular of the province they belong to. Of these vernaculars Hindi is surely one of the most

important and for Anglo-Indian children, who often move from one province to another, it will be found generally useful.

This book is the outcome of the practical experience of the author in teaching Hindi to senior classes working for the Cambridge and Matriculation Examinations and it covers the syllabus of the Junior and Senior Cambridge and the Calcutta Matriculation. It is not meant for biginners but it can be used from class VI or VII and upwards, after the more elementary instruction has been given in the language from classes III or IV of the Junior School.

In every section there are sample exercises for practice, and there are chapters on translation and composition, and a complete vocabulary of about 1000 words at the end, with the genders of all the nouns clearly given. It is fuller and more comprehensive than most of the books for schools already on the market, and I feel sure it will prove a good handbook all practical purposes.

I am glad the author has endeavoured to avoid all high-flown literary words borrowed from the Sanskrit or Persian languages and has introduced instead just those words which are in

common use by Hindi-speaking people in their everyday life.

As the book has been published by a Delhi firm, it was not possible for the Author to correct all the proofs personally and he regrets there are a few errors in printing in spite of all the care and precaution taken by the publishers. These will be carefully corrected in the second edition.

Mr. J. C. Shastri will welcome any criticism or suggestions which his fellow teachers of Hindi may offer and these will be carefully considered and incorporated in a later issue.

A Teacher's Handbook including a key to all the exercises will be published separately.

J. T. LLOYD B. A. (Hons)., E.D.,
Head Master,
St. Andrew's Colonial Homes,
H. G. School.

Kalimpong,
18th April 1939

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS



In preparing the book the author has naturally consulted all the grammars and dictionaries to which he had access, but his acknowledgments are specially due to Kellogg, Greaves, Dann, Mc-Millan, Sircar, Singh and Christian Brothers. His thanks are moreover due for the help of Miss McFadyen, Mr. Mrs. Bamfield and Mr. Scott who kindly revised some sections of the Mss. Further he desires to express his thanks to Mr. J T. Lloyd B. A. (Hons.) Head Master, St A. C. Homes for his continuous guidance and help and for writing a foreword, and to Prof. Sudhakar M. A. who corrected the proofs.

-J. C. S.

CONTENTS





PART I.



GRAMMAR

Cambridge Hindi Grammar.

CHAPTER I.

LETTERS. (वर्ण विचार)

LESSON 1.

THE HINDI ALPHABET (वर्णमाला)

Vowels (स्वर)

1. The Hindi Alphabet consists of forty-six letters.
2. There are eleven vowels.
3. These four are short :
   अ *a*, इ *i*, उ *u*, ऋ *ri*,
4. The rest are long :
   आ *a'*, ई *i'*, ऊ *u'*, ए *e'*, ऐ *ai*, ओ *o*, औ *au*,
5. There are two semi-vowels :
   अं *an*, अः *ah*.

Vowels.

अ *a*	आ *a'*	इ *i*	ई *i'*
उ *u*	ऊ *u'*	ऋ *ri*	
ए *e'*	ऐ *ai*	ओ *o*	औ *au*

Semi-Vowels.

अं अः *ah*

6. All the vowels except अ have a medial form (मात्रा) which is used only when they are written with consonants.

Vowel	Medial form	With a consonant
अ *a*	none	—
आ *a'*	ा	का *ka'*
इ *i*	ि	कि *ki*
ई *i'*	ी	की *ki'*
उ *u*	ु	कु *ku*
ऊ *u'*	ू	कू *ku'*
ऋ *ri*	ृ	कृ *kri*
ए *e*	े	के *ke*
ऐ *ai*	ै	कै *kai*
ओ *o*	ो	को *ko*
औ *au*	ौ	कौ *kau*
अं *an*	ं	कं *kan*
अः *ah*	ः	कः *kah*

Consonants.

1. There are thirtyfive consonants :—

Gutturals	क *k*	ख *kh*	ग *g*	घ *gh*	ङ *ṅ*
Palatals	च *ch*	छ *chh*	ज *j*	झ *or* झ *jh*	ञ *ñ*
Cerebrals	ट *ṭ*	ठ *ṭh*	ड *ḍ*	ढ *ḍh*	ण *or* ण *ṇ*
			ड़ *ṛ*	ढ़ *ṛh*	
Dentals	त *t*	थ *th*	द *d*	ध *dh*	न *n*
Labials	प *p*	फ *ph*	ब *b*	भ *bh*	म *m*
Semi-Vowels	य *y*	र *r*	ल *l*	व *w or v*	
Sibilants	श *sh*	ष *sh*	स *s*		
Aspirate	ह *h*				

2. क्ष or क्ष *ksh* त्र *tr* and ज्ञ are conjunct letters

क्ष or क्ष *ksh* = क *k* + ष *sh*

त्र *tr* = त *t* + र *r*

ज्ञ *gn* or *gy* = ज *j* + ञ *n*

LESSON 2.

Pronunciation.

Mr. Edwin Greaves writes in his well-known Hindi Grammar :—

"In seeking to acquire a correct pronunciation it may be well to consider three points :—

1. "The pronunciation must be learned from the lips of an Indian teacher. Watching attentively the speaker as well as listening to the sounds, is a matter of much importance. Every endeavour should be made to ascertain how the sounds are made, where the tongue is placed etc."

2. "The pronunciation of the letters should be learned as the letters occur in words."

3. "It is still better to group the words in phrases or short sentences, for sounds do not assume their true balance and power, until they take their place as parts of words and sentences."

As the Roman Alphabet does not express the sounds of Hindi letters properly, we shall give Hindi words along with the nearest possible English equivalents."

Vowels (स्वर)

अ	sounds like	*a*	as in	English	America or Hindi	अब *ab*
आ	,,	*a'*	,,	,,	father	,, आम *a'm*
इ	,,	*i*	,,	,,	wrist	,, इमली *imali'*
ई	,,	*e' e*	,,	,,	feet	,, ईख *ikh*
उ	,,	*u*	,,	,,	bull	,, उठ *uth*
ऊ	,,	*u'*	,,	,,	rule	,, ऊन *u'n*

ऋ sounds like *ri* as in English drink or Hindi ऋषि *rishi*

ए	,,	*e"*	,,	,,	they	,,	एक *e'k*
ऐ	,,	*ai*	,,	,,	aisle	,,	ऐनक *ainak*
ओ	,,	*o*	,,	,,	stone	,,	ओज *oj*
औ	,,	*ou*	,,	,,	round	,,	औरत *aurat*
अं	,,	*an*	,,	,,	...	,,	अंडा *an da'*
अः	,,	*ah*	,,	,,	...	,,	दुःख *duh kh*
ँ	...		...	,,	...	...	आंख *an kh*

Consonants (व्यञ्जन)

क sounds like *k* as in kill or Hindi कल *kal*

क़	,,	*ku*	,, Quran	,,	क़ुरान *Qura'n*
ख	,,	*kh*	,, backhand (*one word*)	,,	खाना *kha'na'*
ख़	,,	*ck*	,, Scottish, Loch	,,	ख़ुशी *khushi*
ग	,,	*g*	,, gum	,,	गदहा *gadaha'*
ग़	,,	*g*	,, gone (*deep throaty and guttural*)	,,	बाग़ *ba'g*
घ	,,	*gh*	,, log-house	,,	घर *ghar*
ङ	,,	*ng*	,, England	,,	रङ्ग *rang*
च	,,	*ch*	,, chum,	,,	चल *chal*
छ	,,	*chh*	,, church-house, (run together)	,,	छाता *chha'ta'*
ज	,,	*j*	,, jug	,,	जल *jal*

झ or झ sounds like *dge* as in English hedgehog or Hindi झट *jhat*

(*pronounced together very quickly*)

ञ ,, *gnia* ,, bunch ,, इञ्जन *injan*

ट ,, *t* ,, boat ,, टमटम *tamtam*

(*with tongue on roof of mouth*)

ठ ,, *th* ,, anthill ,, ठग *thag*

(*pronounced quickly; explosive, with tongue on roof of mouth*)

ड ,, *d* ,, hard ,, डाक *Da'k*

ड़ ,, *r* ,, whir ,, लड़का *laraka'*

(*place tongue in same position as cerebral d* (ड) *and pronounce the English r*)

ढ Sounds like *dh* as in English landholder or Hindi (*cerebral explosive*) ढकना *dhakana'*

ढ़ (*aspirate of* ड़) *rh* as in Hindi पढ़ना *parhna'*

ण or ण ,, ,, *n*

(*turn the tongue back as far as cerebral* ट *and then try to pronounce n*)

त ,, ,, *t* Welsh pronunciation of 't' तुम *tum*

(*push the upper teeth with the tip of the tongue*)

थ ,, ,, *th* as in English thermometer or Hindi था *tha'*

द sounds like		*th* as in English them or Hindi दे दो *de*/do				
ध	,,	,,	*dh* ,,	madhouse	,, धोबी	*dhobi*
			(pronounced together)			
न	,,	,,	*n* ,,	name	,, नहीं	*nahin*
प	,,	,,	*p* ,,	pull	,, पुल	*pul*
फ	,,	,,	*ph* ,,	loophole	,, फूल	*phōol*
फ़	,,	,,	*f* ,,	fat	,, फ़सल	*fasal*
ब	,,	,,	*b* ,,	bulb	,, बकरी	*bakari'*
भ	,,	,,	*bh* ,,	Club-house	,, भात	*bha't*
म	,,	,,	*m* ,,	month	,, माली	*ma'li*
य	,,	,,	*y* ,,	yell	,, यह	*yah*
र	,,	,,	*r* ,,	rubber	,, रबड़	*rabar*
ल	,,	,,	*l* ,,	love	,, लड़का	*larka'*
व	,,	,,	*w* or *v* ,,	wait, veal	,, वह	*wah*
श	,,	,,	*sh* ,,	sheet	,, शीशा	*shi'sha'*
ष	,,	,,	*sh* ,,	shot	,, मनुष्य	*manushya*
स	,,	,,	*s* ,,	sun	,, सलाम	*sala'm*
ह	,,	,,	*h* ,,	half	,, हट	*hat*

Conjunct Letters.

क्ष	,,	,,	*ksh* ,,	अक्षर	*akshar*
त्र	,,	,,	*tr* ,,	पत्र	*patra*
ज्ञ	,,	,,	*gy* ,,	आज्ञा	*a'gya'*

EXERCISES.

1. Read aloud :

(*a*) ओ, इ, अं, ई, आ, औ, ऋ, ए; अः, उ, ऐ. अ

(*b*) ग, ङ, ड, न, भ, ल, ष, ह्र, ञ, ख, च, ठ, घ, ब, फं, ब, ञ, ज, द, थ, स, ढ़, घ, अ, ढ, त, प, र. श, ड़, क, झ, ट, थ, क्ष, ऊ, ण, म

2. Write out the English equivalent :—
बा, दि, ढू, टो, री, नौ, अं, दुः, क्ष, कै, ह्रि, आ, के, बै

3. Read aloud :
बाज़ार, किताब, ग़रीब, कूद, जुलाहा, पेड़, बैठा, कटोरा, नौकर. अंधा, आंख, दुःख, मृग ।

LESSON 3.

Classification of Letters.

"The Hindi Alphabet is peculiarly scientific, as will be discovered by carefully studying the "Classification of Letters' Chart." (*Greaves*) "It is arranged on a thoroughly scientific method, the simple vowels (short and long coming first, then the dipthongs, and lastly the consonants in uniform groups according to the organs of speech with which they are pronounced. Thus the dental consonants appear together as *t*, *th*, *d*, *dh*, *n*, and labial as *p*, *ph*, *b*, *bh*, *m*," (*Macdonall*).

Hindi's claim to have the most scientific and perfect alphabet is admitted by no less a person than Sir Isaac Pitman who said, "If there is any perfect and all round alphabet in the world, it is Devnagri' (Hindi)."

Classification of Setters.

	Hard			Soft							
	Hard mutes			Soft mutes							
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11
	Unaspirated	Aspirated	Sibilants	Unaspirated	Aspirated	Nasals	Semi Vowels	Aspirated	Short vowels	Long vowels	Diphthongs
Gutturals.	क	ख		ग	घ	ङ		ह	अ	आ	
Palatals.	च	छ	श	ज	झ	ञ	य		इ	ई	[2] ए/ऐ
Cerebrals.[1]	ट	ठ	ष	ड	ढ	ण	र		ऋ		
Dentals.	त	थ	स	द	ध	न	ल				
Lbieals.	प	फ		ब	भ	म	[4] व		ऊ	ऊ	[3] ओ/औ

Note—1. Also called Linguals.

2. More precisely called Gutturo-palatals

3. „ „ Gutturo-labials.

4. „ „ Dento-labials

The following notes will help the student to understand the chart.

1. Gutturals are uttered from the throat.
2. Palatals are spoken with the aid of the palate.
3. Cerebrals are uttered by bringing the tip of the tongue backward and applying it to the roof of the mouth.
4. Dentals are spoken by means of the teeth and tip of the tongue put close behind the teeth.
5. Labials are uttered by the lips.

Diphthongs

6. ए is made up of अ+इ and ऐ is made up of अ+ए. So they are palato-gutturals.
7. ओ=अ+उ and औ=अ+ओ, are labio-gutturals.
8. व is dento-labial.

Soft Letters

9. The letters are divided into hard and soft. If the breath goes freely or is only partially arrested in uttering a letter that letter is soft (see cols. 4—11).

Hard Letters

10. In the pronunciation of hard letters the is completely arrested. (see colms. 1—3).

Nasals

11. The breath is allowed to escape partially through the nose in pronouncing the nasals (see col. 6).

Short and long Vowels.

12. A short vowel has a corresponding long vowel अ—आ, इ—ई, उ—ऊ,

Aspirated and Unaspirated

13. Consonants are further divided into two classes namely aspirated and unaspirated. In the aspirated consonant the sound of *h* is distinctly audible. All the consonants in cols. 2, 3, 5, 8 are aspirated and the rest of the letters inclusive of the vowels are unaspirated.

Semi-Vowels

14. Semi vowels are so called because they partake the nature of both consonants and vowels.

LESSON 4.

Writing (लिखना)

1. Hindi is written in Devnagari (देवनागरी) characters.
2. There is no capital letter in Hindi.
3. All the letters (except three थ, भ, झ) have lines on the top.

Writing of Vowels

1. The vowels are written in their initial forms, when they are written as independent letters.

आम *a'm* एक *e'k*

कोई *koi* पाई *pa'i*

2. All the Vowels except अ (*a*) have medial forms. They are called मात्रा (*ma'tra'*) in Hindi and are written behind, below, above or in front of a consonant. There are thirteen vowel symbols including the three semi-vowels अं (*vṇ*), अः (aḥ) and ँ (nasal) (see Lesson 1.) (*i*) Five of them are written on the righthand side.

Letters	Symbols	Sounds	Examples
आ	ा	*a'*	काला *ka'la'*
ई	ी	*i'*	रोटी *roti'*
ओ	ो	*o*	कोट *kot*
औ	ौ	*au*	कौन *kaun*
अः	ः	*aḥ*	दुःख *duḥkh*

(*ii*) इ is written on the left hand side :

इ ि *i* पिता *pita'*

ि ,, लिखना *likhana'*

(*iii*) Four of them are written directly over the letters.

Letters	Symbols	Sounds	Examples	
ए	े	*e'*	केला	*ke' la'*
ऐ	ै	ai	कैसा	*kaisa'*
अं	ं	*a*ⁿ	पंखा	*pa*ⁿ*kha'*
Nasal	ँ	—	आंख	*a' nkh*

(*ii*) Three of them are written below the letters:

उ	ु	*u*	कुत्ता	*kutta'*
ऊ	ू	*o'o*	पूरा	*poora'*
ऋ	ृ	*ri*	कृपा	*kipa'* *r*

Writing of Consonants

1. There are two methods of writing consonants:

(*i*) With a vertical stroke (पाई):

ख ग घ च

ज झ ण त

प	ध	न	थ
ब	भ	म	य
ल	व	श	स

(*ii*) without a vertical stroke :

क	ङ	छ	ट
ड	ड़	ढ़	द
र	ह		

2. All the letters have a horizontal line above except ध, भ and झ in which the line is slightly broken. These letters are often confused with घ फ and म whose top *lines* are unbroken. Notice the difference :

घ	ध
म	भ
झ	भ or फ

3. Some letters have alternate form :

अ—अ *a*	आ—आ *a'*
झ—झ *jh*	
ण—ण *ṇ*	
क्ष—क्ष *ksh*	
ल—ल *l*	

Nine Groups

The following nine groups of letters will be useful to the student when practising writing :

१. ग म भ म्क

२. र ए ऐ ण स ख श

३. प ष फ अ आ ओ औ

अं अः

४. ट ठ ढ ढ़ द ध घ छ

५. ड ड़ इ ई ह

६. य थ

७. व ब च क

८. त ऋ न ल

९. ज ञ उ ऊ

Symbols

(*i*) Hal (हल्) which is a mark like ् is written under a consonant if it is not followed by a vowel :

क=क्+अ

का=क्+आ

2. A "Full stop" is indicated by a verticle stroke ı and sometimes by ıı at the close of a couplet of verse, section, paragraph or chapter. The former is more common.

3. Zero (०) callep शून्य indicates abbreviation.

4. The figure two २ written after a word indnicates repetition.

5. Besides these most of the marks and rules of English punctuation are found in modern Hindi books.

6. The following are the numerical symbols:

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
१	२	३	४	५	६	७	८	९	०

ExERCISES

1. Write out the Hindi epuivalente:

1. A"n——
2. I"kh——
3. Mitha'i"——
4. Ha'thi'——
5. Gula'b——
6. La'o——
7. Bha'iu'——
8. Paisa'——
9. Sabear——"
10. Bail——
11. Mohan——
12. Naukar——
13. Ganga——"
14. Chor——
15. A'nkh——
16 Duhkh——
17. Mri'g——
18. Kalam——
19. Ka"Taz——
20. Akshar——
21. Patra——
22. A"gya"——

2. Explain the following symbols :

् (हल्), ।, ०, ॰

3. Read aloud :

४ ६ ३
५ ६ ९
८ ७ ६
३ ० १

LESSON 5.

Conjunct Letters संयुक्त अक्षर

It has already been mentioned that all the consonants have the inherent sound of अ and they become *Hal* if they drop that sound. At the beginning or in the middle of a word such letters join with the consonant which follows, thus forming conjunct letters.

It is always advisable to be guided by examples and so we give the following rules which may prove helpful to beginners at this stage.

THE CONJUNCT LETTERS ARE FORMED:

(i) By dropping the vertical strokes or side lines of the consonants:—

च् + च = च्च	as in	बच्चा	*oacncna*
च् + छ = च्छ	,,	अच्छा	*achchha*
ब् + द = ब्द	,,	शब्द	*shabd*
स + स = स्स	,,	रस्सी	*rassi*

(ii) By writing one above anothre in the case of consonants without vertical strokes:—

क्+क = क्क	as in	पक्का	*pakka*
ट्+ट = ट्ट	,,	खट्टा	*khatta*

ट् + ठ = ट्ठ ,, चिट्ठी *chitthi*
ड् + ड = ड्ड ,, लड्डू *laddu*

(iii) Some conjunct letters have alternate forms:—

च् + च = च्च or च्च
क् + क = क्क ,, क्क
ल् + ल = ल्ल ,, ल्ल
व् + व = व्व ,, व्व

(iv) When त् joins त it takes a different form:—

त् + त = त्त as in कुत्ता *kutta*
त् + त = त्त ,, पत्ता *patta*

(v) When र् joins with any other consonant it takes the form of (ॅ) and goes over the following letter :—

र् + ग = र्ग as in मुर्गा *murga*
र् + ब = र्ब ,, शार्बत *shardat*

(vi) When र् joins with any other consonant it assumes the form of (‑) and is written at the bottom of the preceding letter:—

त् + र = त्र as in पत्र *patra*
प् + र = प्र ,, प्रेम *prem*

(vii) When ट् and ड् join with र they take the form of (ॢ) : —

ट् + र = ट्र as in ट्रेन *train*
ड् + र = ड्र „ ड्राम *dram*

(viii) Examples of irregular conjunct letters

द् + य = द्य as in विद्या *vidya'*
श + न = श्न „ प्रश्न *prashna*
क् + ष = क्ष „ रक्षा *raksha'*
ज् + ञ = ज्ञ „ आज्ञा *agya'*
द् + द = द्द „ चद्दर *chaddar'*
श् + र = श्र „ श्री *shri'*
ह् + म = ह्म „ ब्राह्मण *brahman'*

Full Letters	क ग च ज य ध न प ब म य
Abbreviated	क ग च ज य ध न प ब म य
Full Letters	ल व श स
Abbreviated	ल व श स

EXERCISES

1. For reading and dictation :

क्या	पक्का	अच्छा	मिट्टी	क्रोध
चिट्ठी	उल्लू	पत्ता	पत्थर	पुत्र
सच्चा	लम्बा	तुम्हारा	गद्दी	विद्या
बन्द	अन्धा	शब्द	छप्पर	प्यास
घण्टा	श्री	प्रश्न	कण्ठ	रस्सी
स्नान	बुद्धि	मनुष्य	स्त्री	मुर्गी

Change the following words in Hindi letters:-

1 Khatti'......	11 Matti'......	21 Murgi'....
2 Bhaddi'......	12 Haddi'......	22 Stri'.......
3 Jhankna'......	13 Brahman......	23 Bachcha'.
4 Jaldi'......	14 Tumha'ra'......	24 Makkhi'..
5 Kyon......	15 Mitra......	25 Chilla'ta'.
6 Patti'......	16 Kutta'......	26 Prati'din..
7 Pya's......	17 Mendak......	27 Hindi'......
8 Manushya......	18 Anda'......	28 Tra'm......
9 Lassi'......	19 Achchha'......	29 Ma'rg......
10 Billi'......	20 Pustak......	30 Sna'n......



CHAPTER II.

ETYMOLOGY (शब्द विचार)

LESSON 6

Hindi Words.

Hindi Vocabulary consists of four kinds of words.

1. Pure Sanskrit words called *tatsam* (तत्सम्)

2. Modified Sanskrit words called *tadbhav* (तद्भव)

3. Colloquial or pure Hindi words called *deshaj* or *deshi* (देशी)

4. Foreign words called *bideshi* (विदेशी)

SANSKRIT	HINDI	
माता	मा	mother
मुख	मुँह	mouth
ग्राम	गाँव	village
कर्म	काम	work
मेघ	मेह	cloud
आम्र	आम	mango

FOREIGN WORDS

Persian	Arabic	English	Portuguese
रास्ता road, way	आदमी man	मास्टर master	आलमारी cupboatd
	खबर news	स्कूल school	
बाजार market	मैदान field	आफिस off.ce	कमरा room
तमाशा entertainment	गरीब poor	डाक्टर doctor	पादरी clergyman
	कागज paper	टिकट ticket	
आवाज sound	बाकी remaining	पेंसिल pencil	गिरजा church
हर each		स्लेट slate	
तैयार ready	मजबूत strong	सिनेमा cinema	
शिकार hunting	नकल imitation		
किताब book	उम्र age		
गोल round			

EXERCISE

1. Translatet into Hindi:--

Market
Work
Mango
Paper
Doctor
Room
Church
Pencil
Village
Cupboard
Round
Office
Mother
Field
News

LESSON 7

THE PARTS OF SPEECH IN OUTLINE

The Parts of Speech—The different kinds of words used for different purposes in a sentance are called Parts of Speech. (*Nesfield*)

There are only five divisions of the Parts of Speech in Hindi. They are :

1. Noun संज्ञा
2. Pronoun सर्वनाम
3. Adjective विशेषण
4. Verb क्रिया
5. Indecline अव्यय. It includes the folloing four Parts of Speech :
   - (i) Adverb क्रिया विशेषण
   - (ii) Postposition सम्बन्धबोधक
   - (iii) Conjunction संयोजक or विभाजक
   - (iv) Interjection विस्मयादिबोधक

1. **A Noun** (संज्ञा) is a word used for naming any thing or person. *e g.*

राम (*Ram*) is a boy; शीला (*Sheila*) is a girl; घोड़ा (*the horse*) is an animal; गाड़ी (*a train*) is a

thing; कलकता (*Calcutta*) is a city; डर (*fear*) is a feeling. These are all Nouns.

2. A Prououn (सर्वनाम) is a word used instead of a noun. *e. g.*
मैं I ; तुम you; वह he, she, it; यह this; वह that; मेरा mine, हमारा ours, तुम्हारा yours, उसका his इसका his.

3. An Adjective (विशेषण) is a word used to qualify a noun *e. g.*

छोटा small	बड़ा big
काला black	सफ़ेद white
गरम hot	ठंडा cold
भला good	बुरा bad

4. A Verb (क्रिया) is a word by which a statement is made about some person or thing *e. g.*

जाना to go	जाता है is going
करना to do	करता था was doing
खाना to eat	खाया ate
हँसना to laugh	हँसूँगा will laugh
देखना to see	देखता है is looking
देना to give	देता था was giving
पढ़ना to read	पढ़ूँगा will read

5. **An Indeclinable** (अव्यय) is a word which is not subject to inflexional changes.

(i) **An Adverb** (क्रिया विशेषण) is a word which modifies a verb. *e. g.*

अब्दुल जल्दी आता है	Abdul is coming *quickly*.
अब्दुल यहाँ आया	Abdul came *here*.
अब्दुल धीरे धीरे आयगा।	Abdul will come *slowly*.

(ii) **A postposition** (सम्बन्धबोधक) is a word used for showing what relation one thing stands to another thing.

राम को बुलाओ	Call Ram.
मेज पर किताब है	The book is *on* the table.
वह दरवाजे पर बैठा है	He is sitting *at* the door.
वह उस पेड़ के नीचे बैठा	He sat *under* that tree

Note—In English Grammar the Postposition is called Preposition because it is placed before a Noun. But in Hindi it is placed after the Noun so it is called Postposition.

(iii) **Conjunction or Disjunction** (संयोजक or विभाजक)

राम और सीता	Ram *and* Sita

तुम या तुम्हारा भाई — *Either* you or your brother

(iv) Interjection (विस्मयादिबोधक)

वाह वाह ! — *Bravo !* well done.

हाय ! अब मैं कहाँ जाऊं ? — *Alas !* where am I to go now ?

अहा ! कैसा सुन्दर दिन है — What a lovely day !

EXERCISE

In the following sentences point out the Parts of Speech in which **bold letters** are used

राम वन को जाता है ? लड़के पढ़ रहे हैं । आम मीठा है । राम गाड़ी पर है । उसको बुलाओ । नारंगी मीठी होती है । वह दौड़ता है । सूरज चमक रहा है । देवदत्त खूब खेलता है । गाड़ी तेज चलती है । जो तुम कहो तो मैं जाऊं । ओह ! बड़ी चोट लगी है । आपस में मत लड़ो ।

LESSON 8.

Nouns (संज्ञा)

The kinds of Nouns.

There are five different kinds of Nouns :

1. A Proper Noun (व्यक्ति वाचक) is the name of one particular person or thing.

2. Common Noun (जाति-वाचक) is a name given in common to any and every person, animal or the thing of the same kind.
3. Collective Noun (समुदाय वाचक) is the name for a group of things.
4. Material Noun (द्रव्य वाचक) is for what a thing is made of.
5. Abstract Noun (भाववाचक) is the name for a quality, state or action.

Proper	Common	Collective	Material	Abstract
सोहन (name)	आदमी man	मेला fair	सोना gold	मित्रता friendship
कलकत्ता Calcutta	पशु animal	भीड़ crowd	चाँदी silver	चतुराई cleverness
हिन्दुस्तान India	पुस्तक book	सेना army	लोहा iron	मिठास sweetness
हिमालय Himalya	पेड़ tree	सभा meeting	पत्थर stone	लड़कपन boyhood
गङ्गा Ganges	फल fruit	झुन्ड group	लकड़ी wood	हंसी laughter

HOW ABSTRACT NOUNS ARE FORMED

The Abstract Nouns can be formed from Nouns or from Adjectives or from verbs.

1. FROM NOUNS.

लड़का	+	पन	=	लड़कपन	boyhood
बच्चा	+	पन	=	बचपन	childhood
मित्र	+	ता	=	मित्रता	friendship
कवि	+	ता	=	कविता	poetry
चोर	+	ई	=	चोरी	theft
कारीगर	+	ई	=	कारीगरी	workmanship

2. FROM ADJECTIVES.

लम्बा	+	ई	=	लम्बाई	length
चौड़ा	+	ई	=	चौड़ाइ	breadth
ऊंचा	+	ई	=	ऊंचाइ	height
सच्चा	+	ई	=	सच्चाई	truth
भला	+	ई	=	भलाइ	goodness
मीठा	+	स	=	मिठास	sweetness
बूढ़ा	+	पा	=	बुढ़ापा	old age
सुन्दर	+	ता	=	सुन्दरता	beauty

3. FROM VERBS.

पढ़ाना	+	ई	=	पढ़ाई	teaching
छापना	+	ई	=	छपाइ	printing
सजाना	+	वट	=	सजावट	decoration
बुलाना	+	हट	=	बुलाहट	call
दौड़ना	-	ना	=	दौड़	race

Articles

We do not have the equivalents for the English '*a*' and '*the*' in Hindi. Sometimes no article is used and sometimes they are represented by substitute words.

1. A simple Noun as लड़की means either 'a girl' or 'the girl.'
2. For the Indefinite, एक or कोई is used, thus एक लड़की means 'one girl' or 'a girl' and कोई लड़का means 'a certain boy' or 'any boy.'
3. For the Definite Articles वह or यह is used: यह लड़की this girl. वह लड़की that girl.

EXERCISES

1. Classify the following Nouns and state their meanings:

लोहा	सेना	फूल
आदमी	दार्जिलिंग	दौड़
मेला	मिठास	राम
मित्रता	पेड़	हंसी

2. Translate into Hindi :

Height	Wood
Call	Gold
Meeting	Book
Ganges	India
Crowd	Old age

LESSON 9.

Gender of Nouns

In English there are three genders (i) **Masculine** (ii) **Feminine** and (iii) **Neuter** gender, but in Hindi there are only two genders, ***Masculine and Feminine*** So it is difficult to decide the genders of words that are Neuter in English. The readers are advised to classify animate objects according to sex but in case of inanimate objects they may be guided by the following rules.

All living creatures of male sex are Masculine and of female sex are Feminine.—

Masculine		**Feminine**	
लड़का	boy	लड़की	girl
राजा	king	रानी	queen
बैल	ox	गाय	cow

Gender of Inanimate Objects

Masculine

The following kinds of Nouns are generally Masculine : –

According to ending :

1. Nouns ending in अ (a) आ (á) :—

घर	house	कपड़ा	cloth	घड़ा	jar
पेड़	tree	छाता	umbrella	कमरा	room
जूता	shoe	पंखा	fan		

2. Abstract Nouns ending in पन, आव, पा and त्व :-

लड़कपन	boyhood	दासत्व	slavery
चढ़ाव	ascent	बुढ़ापा	old age

According to Meaning :—

1. Many natural objects, specially if large : –

सूरज	sun	संसार	world
चांद	moon	देश	country
तारा	star	समुद्र	sea

But पृथ्वी earth, नदी river, झील lake are feminine.

2. Minerals and precious stones :

धातु	mineral	पीतल	brass
सोना	gold	तांबा	copper
लोहा	iron	पत्थर	stone
मोती	pearl	हीरा	diamond

But चांदी (silver) and मिट्टी (earth) are feminine.

3 Parts of the body :

सिर	head	कान	ear
मुंह	mouth	नेत्र	eye
बाल	hair	कन्धा	shoulder
गाल	cheek	पेट	stomach
दांत	tooth	पैर	foot
हाथ	hand	शरीर	body
चमड़ा	skin		

But छाती chest, आँख eye, जीभ tongue, बाँह or भुजा arm. देह body are Feminine.

4. Divisions of time :—

वर्ष or साल	year	मास	month
समय	time	घंटा	hour
दिन	day	सोमवार	Monday
सप्ताह or हफ्ता	week		

But रात or रात्रि night and सांझ or सन्ध्या evening are Feminine.

5. Names of hills :—

हिमालय Himalaya   विन्ध्याचल Vindhyachal

6. Some emotions and mental states :—

प्रेम or स्नेह	love	सुख	pleasure
लालच	greed	दुःख	pain
क्रोध	anger	शोक	grief
घमण्ड	pride		

7. Some Nouns are always Masculine :—

चिमगादड़	bat	जोंक	leech
चीता	leopard	पक्षी	bird

EXERCISES

1. To illustrate the use of gender use the following words in sentences :—

कपड़ा	हाथी
नदी	दांत

जूता	कमरा
गाय	रात
सोना	पेर

2. Write the Hindi for :—

Week........	Stone........
Greed........	Day........
Brass........	Hour........
Sea........	Love........
Umbrella........	Fan........

GENDER OF NOUNS

Feminine

The following kinds of Nouns are Feminine :—

According to ending :

1. Nouns ending in ई or इ :—

नदी	river	रात्रि	night
चिट्ठी	letter	बुद्धि	wisdom
टोपी	hat	रीति	manner
कुरसी	chair	हानि	loss
घड़ी	watch	स्याही	ink

But पानी water, घी clarified butter, जी Feeling दही curd are Masculine.

2. Most Sanskrit words ending in आ :—

पाठशाला	school	आज्ञा	order

सभा	meeting	भाषा	language
दया	pity, kindness	सेना	army
चिन्ता	anxiety	कथा	story

3. Abstract Nouns ending in वट, हट, ई and ता :—

सजावट	decoration	बुलाहट	call
लम्बाई	length	सचाई	truth
मित्रता	friendship	कविता	poetry

4. Nouns ending in ई and denoting parts of the body :—

अंगुली	finger	मुट्ठी	fist	कलाई	wrist
दाढ़ी	beard	हड्डी	bone		
छाती	breast	नाड़ी	pulse		

5. Nouns ending in त and ट :—

रात	night	हाट	market
लात	leg	खाट	bed-stead
बात	word, thing	सजावट	decoration
दवात	inkpot	बनावट	make
छत	roof		

But पेट Stomach, कोट coat, खेत field, भात rice are Masculine.

According to meaning :—

1. Names of rivers : —

गंगा	Ganges	सिंध	Indus
यमुना	Jumna	सोन	Soan
गोमती	Gomti		

2. Names of languages : —

हिंदी	Hindi	अरबी	Arabic
अंग्रेजी	English	बंगाली	Bengali
गुजराती	Gujarati	मराठी	Marathi

3. Some Nouns are always Feminine : —

लोमड़ी	fox	मछली	fish
चील	kite	मक्खी	fly
चींटी	ant	चिड़िया	bird
तितली	butterfly		

EXERCISES

1. Translate the following words into Hindi and state their Genders :—

Letter ...	Stomach ....
Language	Bone... .
Night	Field .....
Friendship ...	Army......
Length ...	Fish . . .
Finger	Ant ...

2 Form sentences using the following words :—

दिन	सचाई
हिमालय	हिन्दी
दाल (fem.)	दवात
लोमड़ी	भात
आँख	पाठशाला

LESSON 10

Formation of Feminine Gender.

There are three different ways in which the gender of nouns relating to living beings is formed :—

1. By a change of ending
2. By change of words
3. By placing a prefix नर male or मादा female.

1. By a Change of Ending

The Feminine forms of Nouns are made :—

1. By adding ई to words ending in अ or आ :—

Masculine		Feminine	
लड़का	boy	लड़की	girl
बेटा	son	बेटी	daughter
चाचा	uncle	चाची	aunt
मामा	maternal uncle	मामी	maternal aunt

Masculine		**Feminine**	
मौसा	uncle	मौसी	aunt
नाना	grand father	नानी	grand mother
भतीजा	nephew	भतीजी	niece
कुत्ता	dog	कुत्ती	female dog
बकरा	he-goat	बकरी	she-goat
दास	male-servant	दासी	female-servant
देव	god	देवी	goddess
पुत्र	son	पुत्री	daughter
हरिण	deer	हरिणी	female deer

2. By dropping the final आ :—

भेड़ा	Sheep	भेड़	ewe
भैंसा	he-buffalo	भैंस	she-buffalo

3 By adding इन to Nouns denoting occupation or trade :—

धोबी	washer-man	धोबिन	washer-woman
माली	gardener	मालिन	gardener's wife
लोहार	blacksmith	लोहारिन	black-smith's wife
सुनार	gold-smith	सुनारिन	gold-smith's wife
चमार	shoe-maker	चमारिन	shoe-maker's wife
हजाम	barber	हजामिन	barber's wife
तेली	oil-seller	तेलिन	oil-seller's wife

4. By adding आइन to the words denoting titles:-

Masculine		Feminine	
पण्डित	learned man	पण्डिताइन	learned man's wife
पण्डित	learned man	पण्डिता	learned woman
दुबे	Brahman sect	दुबाइन	
चौबे	"	चौबाइन	
गुरु	teacher	गुरुआइन	teacher's wife

5. By adding आनी :—

मेहतर sweeper मेहतरानी sweeper's wife, sweepress
नौकर servant नौकरानी maid-servant
देवर husband's younger brother देवरानी husband's younger brother's wife

6. By adding नी in nouns refering to animals and birds :—

बाघ	tiger	बाघनी
रीछ	bear	रीछनी
हाथी	elephant	हथिनी
ऊंट	camel	ऊंटनी
सिंह	lion	सिंहनी
मोर	peacock	मोरनी
हंस	swan	हंसिनी

2. By a change of word.

पिता father माता mother

Masculine		Feminine	
राजा	king	रानी	queen
बैल	ox	गाय	cow
भाई	brother	बहिन	sister
पुरुष	man	स्त्री	woman
मनुष्य	man	स्त्री	woman
आदमी	man	औरत	woman
मर्द	man	औरत	woman
पुत्र	son	कन्या	daughter
ससुर	father-in-law	सास	mother-in-law

3. By placing a pre-fix

नर तितली male butterfly — मादा तितली

नर पक्षी male bird — मादा पक्षी

EXERCISE

1. Form Feminines :—

देवर	तेली	मोर ...
धोबी	मामा ..	पुरुष ..
लोहार ...	पण्डित	पिता ...
राजा	भैंसा	बैल ....

2. Give the opposite Genders:—

भाई	पुत्री	औरत ....
देव	माली	बकरी .....
सिंह	भेड़	हाथी ......

3. Compose three sentences in Hindi to illustrate the use of नर and मादा.

4. Translate into Hindi :—

Daughter	Brahman's wife
She-camel	Lady teacher
Mother-in-law	Milk-maid
Lady shop keeper	Pea-hen
Niece	Old woman

LESSON 11.

Number (वचन)

There are only two numbers in Hindi, **Singular** and **Plural.** When a noun denotes *one* object it is Singular (एक वचन). When it denotes *more than one* it is Plural (बहु वचन).

In dealing with Numbers and Cases of Nouns, Nouns are divided into four classes :—

1. Some Masculine Nouns ending in अ
2. All other Masculine Nouns ending in आ or any other vowel and those ending in a consonant
3. Feminine Nouns ending in इ, ई, उ, ऊ.

4. Feminine Nouns ending in any other letter.

PLURAL FORMS OF MASCULINE NOUNS.

The Plural Forms are made :—

1. By changing आ (á) into ए (é) :—

Singular	Plural
घोड़ा A horse	घोड़े Horses
लड़का A boy	लड़के Boys
बच्चा A child	बच्चे Children

But पिता Father, राजा King, मामा Uncle, दादा Grand father and some other words ending in आ of the class II, have the same form in the Plural as in the Singular :—

2 All other Masculine Nouns have the same form in the Plural as in the Singular :—

Singular	Plural
उल्लू An owl	उल्लू Owls
भालू A bear	भालू Bears
भाई A brother	भाई Brothers
घर A house	घर Houses
बालक A child	बालक Children

We can know the number of such Nouns from the Verbs :—

बालक आता है	A child is coming.
बालक आते हैं	Children are coming.

PLURAL FORMS OF FEMININE NOUNS.

1. A Feminine Noun ending in *í* (ई) makes its Nominative Plural by changing the long ई (*í*) into short इ (*i*) and add ng याँ (yán) :—

Singular		Plural	
लड़की	a girl	लड़कियाँ	girls
टोपी	a hat	टोपियाँ	hats
नदी	a river	नदियां	rivers
स्त्री	a woman	स्त्रियाँ.	women

2. A Feminine Noun ending in इ (*i*) makes its Nominative Plural by adding याँ (yán) :—

जाति	a race	जातियाँ	races
पंक्ति	a row	पंक्तियाँ	rows
रीति	a method	रीतियां	methods

3. A Feminine Noun ending in या (yá) makes its Nominative Plural by adding *an* (ँ) answer :-

चिड़िया	a bird	चिड़ियाँ	birds
बुढ़िया	an old woman	बुढ़ियाँ	old women
गुड़िया	a doll	गुड़ियाँ	dolls

4. A Feminine Noun ending in अ or a consonant makes its Nominative Plural by adding ें (*en*):—.

बहिन	a sister	बहिनें	sisters

Singular		Plural	
पुस्तक	a book	पुस्तकें	books
गाय	a cow	गायें	cows
रात	a night	रातें	nights
बात	a word	बातें	words
औरत	a woman	औरतें	women

5. Feminine Nouns ending in आ, उ and ऊ make their Nominative Plural by adding एं (*en*) :—

माता	a mother	मातायं	mothers
माला	a garland	मालायें	garlands
सेना	an army	सेनायें	armies
वस्तु	an article	वस्तुयें	articles
ऋतु	a season	ऋतुयें	seasons
बहू	a daughter-in-law	बहुयें	daughters-in-law

COLLECTIVE NOUNS AS PLURALS

मनुष्यगण	menfolk
लड़के लोग	boys
पाठकवर्ग	readers (lit. class of readers)

Ever-plural words

प्राण	life	भाग्य	luck, fortune
आप	you	बाल	hair
लोग	people		

EXERCISES

1. Write the Hindi for :—

Rivers........	Cows........
Women........	Words.... ....
Birds........	Hair........
Garlands.......	Price........
Armies........	Life........

2. Give the Plural forms of the following Nouns

मछली	पिता
माता	किताब (fem.)
भाई	घड़ा
हाथी	बहू
ऋतु	रात

3. Form sentences using the following words :

घोड़े	बुढ़िया
भाई	बहिनें
स्त्रियाँ	चिड़ियाँ

—*:▬:*—

CHAPTER III.

CASES.

LESSON 12.

Case I (कारक)

Definition—**Case** indicates the relation in which a Noun or a Pronoun stands to some other words in a sentence.

Eight Cases in Hindi—There are eight Cases in Hindi, which are formed by adding a Case-sign (विभक्ति) or Postposition.

They are as follows :—

	Case		Case sign
1.	Nominative	कर्त्ता	none or ने (untranslated)
2.	Accusative	कर्म	none or को to
3.	Instrumental	करण	से by, with, through
4	Dative	सम्प्रदान	को to, के लिये for
5.	Ablative	अपादान	से from, than
6.	Genitive	संबंध	का, के, की of
7.	Locative	अधिकरण	में, पर in, on, at
8.	Vocative	संबोधन	none

The Hindi Postpositions are to some extent the equivalents of the English Prepositions. They are called so because they are placed after a Noun or a Pronoun.

Inflections of Nouns with Postpositions.

A change of the form is called an inflection. In dealing with the changes the students should always bear in mind the four classes of Nouns already mentioned in the last lesson.

In the Singular there is no inflexional change in classes II, III and IV but in class I the आ is changed to ए (é) : –

लड़का — लड़के ने

In the plural ओं is generally added to all the words but sometimes there may be a slight modification of the stem.

Class	Inflexional changes.	Singular.	Plural.
I	आ is changed to ओं	लड़के ने boy	लड़कों ने boys
II	add ों	घर में in the house	घरों में in the houses
	add ओं	पिता से from the father	पिताओं से from the fathers
„	ई is changed to यों	हाथी पर on the elephant	हाथियों पर on the elephants
„	„	कवि से by the poet	कवियों से by the poets
„	उ „ ओं	भालू के लिये for the bear	भालुओं के लिये for the bears

Class	Infexional changes	Singular	Plural
II	उ is changed to ओं	गुरु का of the teacher	गुरुओं का of the teachers
III	ई „ इयों	लड़की को to the girl	लड़कियों को to the girls
„	इ „ „	रात्रि में in the night	रात्रियों में in the nights
„	ऊ „ „	बहू ने daughter in-law	बहुओं ने daughters-in law
„	उ „ „	वस्तु का of the thing	वस्तुओं का of the things
IV	add ओं	माता ने mother	माताओं ने mothers
„	„ ों	औरत को to the woman	औरतों को to the women

EXERCISES

1. Give the Plurals:—

कवि के लिये	बहू से
बेटे को	औरत का
पिता ने	रात्रि
हाथी के लिये	गौ का
भालू पर	सेना में

2. Translate into Hindi:—

for the teachers
to the fathers.
of the boys.
for the bears.
from the mothers
for the daughters-in-law.
of the poets.
in the houses.

LESSON 13

Case II (*continued*)

1. (*a*) **The Nominative Case**—When a Noun is used as a subject to a Verb it is said to be in the Nominative Case. There are two forms of the Nominative Case. The first does not use a post-position, e. g.

बालक a child ; लड़का a boy, मैं I.

(*b*) The second form of the Nominative with ने is called the **Agentive Case** and is used only with all the tenses formed from the Perfect Participle of the Transitive Verbs. e. g.

मैंने मनुष्य को देखा I saw the man.
उसने लड़के को मारा He struck the boy.

2. **The Accusative (Objective) Case**—When a Noun is the direct object to a Verb it is said to be in the Accusative Case. It also has two forms. One form is the same as the Nominative while the other uses the Post-position को e. g.

मैंने एक पुस्तक पढ़ी	I read a book
माता ने पिता को देखा है	The mother has seen the father.

3. **The Instrumental Case**—It indicates the means by which an action is performed and the Postposition से (by, with or through) is used with it. *e. g.*

क़लम से लिखो	Write with a pen.
तलवार से मार डालो	Kill with a sword

आदमी आंख से देखता और कान से सुनता है

A man sees with (his) eyes and hears with (his) ears.

4. **The Dative Case**—It denotes the person or thing for which the work is done. As a matter of fact, the Accusative and Dative Cases are the cases of Direct and Indirect object respectively and को (*to*), के लिये (*for*), के वास्ते (*for*) are used with the Indirect object. *e. g.*

मोहन को मिठाई दो	Give sweets to Mehan
मैंने भिखारी को एक आना दिया	I gave one anna to the beggar.
वह मेरे लिए भोजन लाया	He brought food for me.
गाय के वास्ते घास लाओ	Bring grass for the cow

5. **The Ablative Case**—It signifies separation or motion from or comparison with and से (*from*, *since*, *for*, *than*) is used with this case. *e.g.*,

वह घर से निकला He came out of the house,
तुम कहां से आये हो Where have you come from?
वे कलकत्ता से आये हैं They have come from Calcutta.
पेड़ से आम गिरा A mango fell from the tree.
वह मुझ से छोटा है He is smaller than I.

6. **The Genitive Case** – It often denotes the possessor or owner, It also indicates source and origin, It is formed by adding का, के, की (*of*) and is inflected like an Adjective and agrees with the governing Noun *e.g.*

उस का घोड़ा His horse, राम का घर Ram's house
उस के घोड़े His horses, राम के घर Ram's houses
उस की घोड़ी His mare, राम की मां Ram's mother
उस की घोड़ियाँ His mares,

7. **The Locative Case**—signifies the place or time at which the action takes place, It has two case-signs) में (in), पर (on, at, upon) *e.g*

वह अपने घर में रहता है He lives in his house,
अरबमें ऊंट पाये जाते हैं Camels are found in Arabia

पलंग पर चादर बिछाओ — Spread sheets on the bed.

मोहन दरवाजे पर बैठा था — Mohan was sitting at the door.

वह मेरे घोड़े पर आया — He came upon my horse.

8. **The Vocative Case**- When the Nominative Case is used for the sake of address, it is said to be in the Vocative Case :

It is formed by adding हे, अरे or some other Interjection at the beginning of the Nominative sometimes no Interjection is used.

हे लड़को !	हे मित्रो !	लड़कियो !
Boys !	Friends !	Girls !

Note—In the singular it is identical in form with the oblique form of Nouns, The Plural is the same as the oblique plural without **anusváar.**

QUESTIONS

1, What is the difference between the Instrumental and Ablative Case? Give examples,

2, When is the Postposition ने used with the Nominative case? When is it not used?

3. Explain with examples the two forms of the Accusative Case?

4 State conditions under which the case-sign का of the Genitive case is changed into के and की,

5, Give Vocative Plurals of लड़की, बहिन and माता, What is the difference between the Nominative and Vocative Plural?

LESSON 14

Declension of Nouns.

Class I

लड़का A boy

Case.	Singular.	Plural.
Nominative	लड़का	लड़के
Agentive	लड़के ने	लड़कों ने
Accusative	लड़का लड़के को	लड़के लड़कों को
Instrumental	लड़के से	लड़कों से
Dative	लड़के को, के लिये	लड़कों को, के लिये
Ablative	लड़के से	लड़कों से
Genitive	लड़के का, क, की	लड़कों का, के, की
Locative	लड़के में, पर	लड़कोंमें, पर
Vocative	हे लड़के	हे लड़को

All the Masculine Nouns ending in आ are declined like लड़का except a few mentioned in the class II. Some of them are the following :—

लड़का	boy	गदहा	donkey	घोड़ा	horse
बेटा	son	भतीजा	nephew	कपड़ा	cloth
कुत्ता	dog	पोता	grandson	कमरा	room
तोता	parrot	तकिया	pillow	घड़ा	jar
पंखा	fan	चमड़ा	leather		

Class II.

	राजा A King		बालक A boy	
Case	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nominative	राजा	राजा	बालक	बालक
Agentive	राजा ने	राजाओं ने	बालक ने	बालकों ने
Accusative	राजा राजा को	राजा राजाओं को	बालक बालक को	बालक बालकों को
Instrumental	राजा से	राजाओं से	बालक से	बालकों से
Dative	राजा को, के लिए	राजाओं को, के लिए	बालक को, के लिये	बालकों को, के लिए
Ablative	राजा से	राजाओं से	बालक से	बालकों से
Genitive	राजा का, के, की	राजाओं का, के, की	बालक का, के, की	बालकों का के की
Locative	राजा में, पर	राजाओं में, पर	बालक में, पर	बालकों में, पर
Vocative	हे राजा	हे राजाओ	हे बालक	हे बालको

Class IV

All the Feminine Nouns of class IV are declined like the Masculine Nouns of class II in all cases except the Nominative and Accusative Plurals : —

Case	माता mother		औरत woman		रात night	
	Sing	Plural	Sing.	Plural	Sfng.	Plural
Nominative	माता	मातायें	औरत	औरतें	रात	रातें
Agentive	माता ने	माताओं ने	औरत ने	औरतोंने	रातां ने	रातों ने
Accusative	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,	,,

Class II (*a*) Masculine Nouns ending in आ as पिता father चाचा, मामा uncle, महाराजा King नाना, बाबा, दादा grand father युवा young man etc are declined like राजा.

(*b*) Masculine Nouns endlng in अ as मनुष्य man, घर h use, फल fruit, फूल flower, सिंह lion, बाघ tiger. पंडित learned man, कान ear, पहाड़ hill, नौकर servant, नाम name, तीर arrow, पत्थर stone etc. are declined like बालक

Class IV (*a*) Feminine Nouns ending in आ as माता mother, माला garland, लता creeper, कन्या daughter, पाठशाला school, बुढ़िया

old woman, चिड़िया bird etc. are declined like माता.

(b) Feminine Nouns ending in any other letter as गौ cow, पुस्तक book, आँख eye, चीज thing, घास grass, बात word, भैंस buffalo, कोदों millet, सरसों mustard seed etc are declined like औरत.

Class ii

Case	माली gardener		भालू bear	
	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nominative	माली	माली	भालू	भालू
Agentive	माली ने	मालियों ने	भालू ने	भालुओं ने
Accusative	माली माली को	माली मालियों को	भालू भालू को	भालू भालुओं को
Instrumental	माली से	मालियों से	भालू से	भालुओं से
Dative	माली को, के लिये	मालियों को, के लिए	भालू को के लिये	भालुओं को, के लिए
Ablative	माली से	मालियों से	भालू से	भालुओं से
Genitive	माली का, के, की	मालियों का, के, की	भालू का, के, की	भालुओं का, के की
Locative	माली में, पर	मालियों में, पर	भालू में पर	भालुओं में पर
Vocative	माली	मालियो	भालू	भालुओ

All Masculine Nouns ending in इ or ई are declined like माली and Masculine Nouns ending in उ or ऊ are declined like भालू. They are as follows :—

Ending in इ or ई		Ending in उ or ऊ	
मुनि sage	पापी sinner	गुरु teacher	डाकू robber
कवि poet	बंगाली Bengali	साधु hermit	
हरि name	हाथी elephant		
धोबी washerman	मोची shoemaker		
भाई brother	मंत्री minister		

Class III

All the Feminine Nouns of class III ending in इ, ई, उ, ऊ are declined like the Masculine Nouns of class II with the exception of the Nominative and Accusative plurals.

Case	लड़की girl		बहू daughter-in-law	
	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nominative	लड़की	लड़कियाँ	बहू	बहुए
Accusative	,,	,,	,,	,,

All other Feminine Nouns belonging to this class are also declined like the Masculine Nouns of class II with the exception of the plural number in the Nominative and Accusative case.

Case	गौ cow		पुस्तक book	
	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nominative	गौ	गौएं	पुस्तक	पुस्तकें
Accusative	"	"	"	"

Nouns ending in इ, ई, उ ऊ

रात्रि night	स्त्री woman	टोपी hat
तिथि date	नदी river	गाड़ी coach
रीति method	रानी queen	लाठी stick
हानि loss	कहानी story	रस्सी string
वस्तु thing	तराजू scales	
ऋतु season	बालू sand.	

EXERCISES

1. Give the Genitive Case of :

   लड़का. लड़की, पिता and वस्तु.

2. Give the Ablative Singular and the Nominative and Ablative Plural of :

   धोबी, नदी, घोड़ा, राजा, फल.

3. Give the Nominative Plural of :

   कन्या, रीति, लोटा, माता, बात, छोटी लड़की, भोला लड़का

CHAPTER IV

ADJECTIVES

LESSON 15

Adjecttives (विशेषण)

The Kinds of Adjectives

There are altogether eight different kinds of Adjectives :

1. **Proper:** (describing a thing by some Proper Noun) हिन्दी भाषा Hindi language.
2. **Descriptive:** (showing of what quality or in what state a thing is) चतुर लड़का a clever boy, काला घोड़ा a black horse.
3. **Quantitative:** (showing how much of a thing is meant) सब लड़के all boys, कोई आदमी any man, थोड़ा पानी a little water.
4. **Numeral:** (showing how many things or in what order) पाँच आने five annas, दस सेर ten seers.
5. **Demonstrative:** (showing which or what thing is meant) यह पुस्तक this book, वह लड़की that girl.

6. **Interrogative** : (asking which or what thing is meant) कौन सा कपड़ा what cloth ?

7. **Distributive** : (showing that things are taken separately or in a separate lot).
हर एक सिपाही every soldier; प्रति दिन every day.

8. **Possessive** मेरा बेटा my son; हमारे घोड़े our horses

Inflexion of Adjectives

1. All the Adjectives agree with Nouns in. Number and Gender.

2. An Adjective ending in á आ retains its á आ when it qualifies a Masculine Singular Noun, without a Post-position :

काला घोड़ा	a black horse.
अच्छा लड़का	a good boy.

3. आ (á) will change into ए or े (é) when there is a Post-position.

अच्छे लड़के ने	a good boy
काले घोड़े पर	on a black horse

4. आ (á) will change into ए or े (é) when it qualifies a Plural Masculine Noun :

काले घोड़े black horses

अच्छे लड़के good boys

5. आ (á) will change into ई or ी ( ) when it qualifies a Feminine :

काली घोड़ी a black mare

अच्छी लड़की a good girl

6. All other Adjectives remain unchanged.

Declension of Adjectives

अच्छा लड़का a good boy.

	Singular	Plural
Non.	अच्छा लड़का	अच्छे लड़के
	अच्छे लड़के ने	,, लड़कों ने
Accus.	अच्छा लड़का	,, लड़के
	अच्छे लड़के को	,, लड़कों को
Instr.	,, ,, से	,, ,, से
Dative	,, ,, को, के लिए	,, ,, को, के लिए
Ablative	,, ,, से	,, ,, से
Genitive	,, ,, का, के, की,	,, ,, का, के, की,
Locative	,, ,, में, पर	,, ,, में, पर
Vocative	,, ,, हे अच्छे लड़के	हे अच्छे लड़को

Some Suitable Adjectives.

A fat man	एक मोटा आदमी
A big tree	एक बड़ा पेड़
A ripe mango	पक्का आम
The green fruits	कच्चे फल
Raw meat	कच्चा मांस
An idle boy	आलसी लड़का
An honest man	ईमानदार आदमी
A dark night	अन्धेरी रात
A useful thing	काम की चीज
Fresh milk	ताजा दूध
The old woman	बूढ़ी स्त्री
The old women	बूढ़ी स्त्रियाँ
A little water	जरा सा पानी
A few men	थोड़े से आदमी
Many women	बहुत स्त्रियाँ
Some birds	कुछ चिड़ियाँ
Both boys	दोनों लड़के
All my books	मेरी सारी पुस्तकें
All thos girls	वे सब लड़कियाँ
Many men	बहुत आदमी
Many times	बहुत बार .

Much time	बहुत सा समय
Some flowers	थोड़े से फूल
Any flower	कोई फूल
Each flower	हर एक फूल
Every "	"
Such a flower	ऐसा (इस तरह का) फूल

EXERCISE

1. **Translate into Hindi :**

   1. This lazy man. 2. His black goats. 3. Any good woman. 4. That high hill. 5. Both the girls. 6. Such a big fish. 7. This hot water 8. My big sons. 9. Her small daughters. 10. Such a book.

2. **Give the Nominative Plural and Genitive Singular and Plural of :**

   भोला लड़का, छोटी लड़की, सफेद घर, काली टोपी

LESSON 16.

Comparison of Adjectives.

There are three degrees of Comparison :— Positive, Comparative and Superlative.

Comparatives :

1. The use of the Ablative से (than) is a very common wa y of expresing comparison.

यह लड़का उस लड़के से छोटा है This boy is smaller than that boy.

यह कलम उससे बड़ी है — This pen is bigger than that pen.

2. Sometimes उसकी अपेक्षा (than that) or उसकी बनिस्बत (in Urdu) is used :

उसकी अपेक्षा यह फूल सुन्दर है — This flower is prettier than that flower,

3, अधिक, बढ़कर (more) or कम (less) is also used after से and before the Adjective.

Superlatives :

The best method of expressing the Superlative is to use सबसे (of all).

सब will be used before the Noun and से after it.

यह फूल सब फूलों से सुन्दर है

This flower is the prettiest of all the flowers.

2. Sometimes में is used instead of Ablative से :

सब लड़कों में यह लड़का अच्छा है।

This boy is the best of the lot (among all the (boys)

3 Some other expressions

बड़े स बड़ा (Singular) the biggest.

बड़े से बड़े (Plural) „

उत्तम से उत्तम the best

परम supreme अत्यन्त exceedingly

बहुत much ज्यादा (Urdu) much.

EXERCISE.

1. Translate into English --

१ सब लड़कों में जॉन अच्छा है।

२ सब लड़कियों में सोफिया सबसे सुन्दर है।

३ क्या तुम मुझे इससे मोटी छड़ी दे सकते हो ?

४ शहर भर म उसक पिता सबसे अधिक धनी ह।

५ विलियम एडवर्ड की अपेक्षा दो वष छोटा है।

६ फूलों म गुलाब सबसे बढ़कर सुन्दर होता है।

७ सब पशुओं में सिंह बलवान होता है।

८ बम्बई कलकत्ता से बड़ा शहर है।

९ आज मोती की हालत कल से अच्छी है।

१० इस श्रेणी में राम सब से होशियार लड़का है।

2 Translate into Hindi.

1. This book is big,
2, That book is bigger than this,
3, My book is biggest of the three.
4, This chair is larger than that,
5, Tell me, which of these two girls is taller.
6' This yellow mango looks riper than that red one,

7. **He is older than I am.**

8. **This man is stronger than that man.**

9. **John is the cleverest of all the men.**

10. **This flower is the prettiest of all flowers.**

LESSON 17.

ADJECTIVES

(SOME MORE USAGES)

USE OF सा, से, सी.

The Adjectival suffixes **सा, से, सी** play an important role in Hindi idioms. The following points should be noted here.

They are used:

1. To express relation or resemblance in quality:

आग सा गरम as hot as fire.

बर्फ सा ठंडा as cold as ice.

2. To express resemblance of a lesser degree and as such it has the force of English.—"ish"

ज्वर सा or **बुखार सा** feverish, **लाल सा** reddish

3 To intensify an Adjective:

तरकारी मेंथोड़ा सा नमक डालो Put *a little* salt in the curry.

4. To specialise the Interrogative Pronoun, कौन which :

इन खिलौनों में से कौन सा खिलौना मेरा है ?

Which one of these toys is mine ?

5. To express identity either apparent or real एक सा is used :

ये दोनों चीजें एक सी हैं These two things are alike;

ये दोनों भाई एक से हैं These two brothers are alike.

As an Adjective :

यह कौनसी बड़ी बात है (lit. What great thing is this ?) It is a trifle.

7. With a Noun or Pronoun in the Genitive case :

बन्दर के हाथ पाँव मनुष्य के से होते हैं।

The hands and feet of a monkey are like those of a man

DOUBLE ADJECTIVES

Sometimes another adjective similar, though not necessarily identical in meaning is added to an Adjective to give more prominence to the quality or to intensify its meaning,

दुबला-पतला lean and thin

मोटा-ताजा stout and fresh (for a strong man)

लम्बा-चौड़ा	long and broad (for a tall man)
मैला-कुचैला	very dirty.
कम या ज्यादा	more or less.
ऊंच-नीच	high and low.

REPETITION OF ADJECTIVES

वहाँ बड़े बड़े राजा आये	many great kings came there
नये नये लड़के	many new boys.
मीठे मीठे फल	only sweet fruits.
उनके तीन तीन बेटे थे	each of them had three sons.

EXERCISES

1. Translate into English :—

१ धुआँ सा दिखाई देता है ।

२ उस के कपड़े दूध से सफेद हैं ।

३ दूध में थोड़ी सी चीनी डालो ।

४ इन जूतों में से कौन सा जूता मेरा है ।

५ ये दोनों लड़कियाँ एक सी हैं ।

६ इन आमों में से मीठे मीठे आम चुन लो ।

७ इस साल स्कूल में बहुत से नये नये लड़के आये हैं ।

८ वह आदमी बड़ा मैला कुचैला है ।

९ यह कौन सा आदमी है ।

१० उस सभा में बहुत से बड़े बड़े आदमी आये थे ।

2. Form sentences using the following words :

छोटे छोटे. पांच पांच. दुबला पतला, कौन सा, थोड़ा सा पक्के पक्के, कोयला सा, से, सी ।

LESSON 18

NUMERALS

1. THE CARDINAL NUMBERS :—

Numerical symbols		Name	Alternate form	Numerical symbols		Name	Alternate form
1	१	एक		11	११	इग्यारह	ग्यारह
2	२	दो		12	१२	बारह	
3	३	तीन		13	१३	तेरह	
4	४	चार		14	१४	चौदह	
5	५	पांच		15	१५	पंद्रह	
6	६	छः		16	१६	सोलह	
7	७	सात		17	१७	सत्तरह	सत्तरह
8	८	आठ		18	१८	अठारह	अट्ठारह
9	९	नौ		19	१९	उन्नीस	उनीस
10	१०	दस		20	२०	बीस	

Numerical symbols		Name	Alternate form	Numerical symbols		Name	Alternate form
21	२१	इक्कीस	एकईस	36	३६	छत्तीस	
22	२२	बाइस		37	३७	सैंतीस	
23	२३	तेईस		38	३८	अड़तीस	
24	२४	चौबीस		39	३९	उनतालीस	उनचा-लीस
25	२५	पच्चीस	पचीस	40	४०	चालीस	
26	२६	छब्बीस		41	४१	इकत.लीस	एकतालीस
27	२७	सताईस		42	४२	बयालीस	बेयालीस
28	५८	अठाईस	अट्ठाइस	43	४३	तैंतालीस	
29	२९	उन्तीस		44	४४	चौआलीस	चवांलीस
30	३०	तीस		45	४५	पैंतालीस	
31	३१	इकतीस	एकतीस	46	४६	छियालीस	
32	३२	बत्तीस	बतीस	47	४७	सैंतालीस	
33	३	तेईस	तैंतीस	48	४८	अड़तालीस	
34	३४	चौबीस		49	४९	उनचास	
35	३५	पैंतीस		50	५०	पचास	

Numerical symbols		Name	Alternate form	Numerical symbols		Name	Alternate form
51	५१	इकावन	एकावन	66	६६	छियासठ	
52	५२	बावन		67	६७	सड़सठ	सरसठ
53	५३	तिरपन	तिरेपन	68	६८	अड़सठ	
54	५४	चौवन		69	६९	उनहत्तर	
55	५५	पचपन		70	७०	सत्तर	
56	५६	छप्पन		71	७१	इकहत्तर	एकहत्तर
57	५७	सत्तावन		72	७२	बहत्तर	
58	५८	अट्ठावन	अठावन	73	७३	तिहत्तर	
59	५९	उनसठ		74	७४	चौहत्तर	
60	६०	साठ		75	७५	पचहत्तर	पछत्तर
61	६१	इकसठ	एकसठ	76	७६	छिहत्तर	
62	६२	बासठ		77	७७	सतहत्तर	सतत्तर
63	६३	तिरसठ	तिरेसठ	78	७८	अठहत्तर	अठत्तर
64	६४	चौंसठ		79	७९	उनासी	उन्नासी
65	६५	पैंसठ		80	८०	अस्सी	

Numerical symbols		Name	Alternate form	Numerical symbols		Name	Alternate form
81	८१	इकासी	एक्यासी	91	९१	इकानवे	इक्यानवे
82	८२	बयासी		92	९२	बानवे	
83	८३	तिरासी		93	९३	तिरानवे	
84	८४	चौरासी		94	९४	चौरानवे	
85	८५	पचासी	पच्चासी	95	९५	पंचानवे	पचानवे
86	८६	छियासी		96	९६	छियानवे	
87	८७	सतासी	सत्तासी	97	९७	सत्तानवे	सतानवे
88	८८	अठासी	अट्ठासी	98	९८	अट्ठानवे	अठानवे
89	८९	नवासी		99	९९	निनानवे	निन्यानवे
90	९०	नब्बे	नव्वे	100	१००	सौ	सै

Beyond 100 the numbers proceed regularly

101 एक सौ एक, 1000 एक हजार

102 एक सौ दो, 1,00,000 एक लाख

103 एक सौ तीन, 100 lacs एक करोड़

104 एक सौ चार,

2. ORDINALS.

First	पहिला or पहला	Fifth	पाचवां
Second	दूसरा	Sixth	छठवां or छठा
Third	तीसरा	Seventh	सातवाँ
Fourth	चौथा	Eighth	आठवाँ

3. PROPORTIONALS.

दुगना, दुगुना or दूना	Twice or two times
तिगुना	Three times
चौगुना	Four "
पंचगुना	Five "

4. COLLECTIVES

	a score	दोनों	the, two, both
सैकड़ा	a hundred	तीनों	the three
जोड़ा or जोड़ी	a pair	चारों	the four
दर्जन	a dozen		

5. FRACTIONS.

¼ चौथाई or पाव, ⅓ तिहाइ, ½ आधा ¾ पौन, −¼ less पौने, 1¼ सवा, +¼ more सवा, 1½ डेढ़, 2½ अढ़ाई, +½ more साढ़े,

ADDITION SUBTRACTION ETC.

Addition	जोड़ना	Multiplication	गुणा करना
Subtraction	घटाना	Division	भाग देना

Idioms

दो दो	= two at a time.
चार चार	= four at a time, four apiece.
तीन लड़के	= three boys.
तीनों लड़के	= the three boys.
सौ	= one hundred,
सैकड़ों	= hundreds.
लाख	= one hundred thousand,
लाखों	= hundreds of thousands.
दस लाख	= one million.
हज़ारों	= thousands.
दो एक	= about a couple
दो चार	= just a few.
दस बजे हैं	= it is ten O'clock.
बारह बजकर दस मिनट	= ten minutes **past** twelve.
बारह बजने में दस मिनट	=ten minutes **to** twelve.
सवा बारह बजे हैं	=it is **quarter past** twelve.
साढ़े बारह बजे हैं	= it is **half past** twelve.
पौन (पौने एक) बजा है	= it is **quarter to** one.
सवा (एक) बजा है	= it is **quarter past** one.
अढ़ाई बजा है	= it is **half past** two.
पांच बरस का लड़का	= a **five year's old** boy.
कितने बरस का	= how **old ?**

EXERCISES.

1. (**a**) Give in figures and write the Hindi of 25, 42. 58, 36, 57, 65, 7, 60, 76, 237, 485 79, 96, 81. 94.

(**b**) Write out in words 175 men, $2\frac{1}{2}$ seers, Rs. 1-8-0, $7\frac{1}{4}$ annas. $2\frac{1}{2}$, $2\frac{3}{4}$, $3\frac{1}{4}$,

2. Translate into English :--

१. यहां दो हज़ार सिपाही आये हैं।

२. इस स्कूल में ५८२ लड़के लड़कियां पढ़ते हैं

३. जब मैं दिल्ली गया तब मैं चौदह बरस का था।

४. एक रुपये में साढ़े आठ सेर चावल मिलता है।

५. यह लड़का सातवीं पुस्तक पढ़ता है।

६. इस घोड़े का दाम सवा तीन सौ रुपया है।

७. शाम को पौने सात बजे मैं आपके घर आऊंगा।

८. यह कमरा उस कमरे से तिगुना बड़ा है।

९. केथरिन ने यह कुत्ता सवा रुपये में खरीदा।

१०. ग्यारह बजकर दस मिनट पर भोजन तैयार हो जाना चाहिये

११. मित्र! कल तुम कितने बजे यहां आओगे?

१२. मेरा घर यहां से पोन मील दूर होगा।

१३. अब दस बजने में सात मनिट हैं।

१४. गाड़ी साढ़े पांच बजे छूटेगी ।

१५. हमने उस कविता के पहले और तीसरे पद (Verse) गाये ।

3. Translate into Hindi :—

1. His father died at ten minutes past eleven.
2. 317 soldiers came from the Punjab.
3. This boy is twelve yeary old.
4. The price of this book is one rupee.
5. There are fifty boys in this class.
6. The meal will be ready at quarter to 7, *i.e.* after half an hour.
7. We shall go to the play ground at half past three
8. Please give me one rupee and four annas.
9. This girl has finished the second book, now she will read the third book.
10. I bought this hat for two rupees and four annas.



CHAPTER V.

PRONOUNS.

LESSON 19.

Pronouns

A Pronoun is a word used instead of a Noun, but there are also word which are classed as Pronouns but are used as Adjectives. The latter type of Pronoun as called Ponominal Adjctives.

There are eight different kinds of Pronouns:—

(1) **Personal** as मैं I; तू thou. वह he, she, it, तुम you; हम we etc.

(2) **Honorific** as आप, honour.

(3) **Reflexive** as अपना own, ourself अपने आप.

(4) **Possessive** as मेरा my, mine; तेरा they, thine, उसका his, her, hers; तुम्हारा your, yours; उनका their, theirs.

(5) **Relative** as जो who, which or that, सो that.

6) **Interrogative** कौन who, which, क्या what etc.

(6) **Definite De-**
monstrative वह this, वह that etc.

(8) **Indefinite** कोई any, कुछ some. सब all.

Changes in the Form of Pronouns.

Pronoun undergo the following changes when followed by a Post-position.

pronoun.	यह this	वह that	कौन who	कोई any
Singular	इसको or इसे	उससे	किसके लिए	किसी का
Plural	इनको or इन्हें	उनसे	किनके लिए	किन्हीं का

Pronoun.	जो who	सो that	मैं I	तू thou
Singular	जिसने	तिसको	मुझसे	तुझको or
Plural	जिन्होंने or जिनने	तिनको or तिन्हें	हमसे	तुमको or तुम्हें

The Possessive of तू and मैं will be तेरा, तेरे, तरी, मेरा, मेरे, मेरी, in the Singular, anb तुम्हारा-रे-री, हमारा-रे-री in the Plural.

DECLENSION OF PRONOUNS (in both Genders)

Singular.

Case.	Demonstrative.		Relative.		Interrogative	Indefinite
	यह this	वह that	जो who	सो that	कौन who, which	कोई onlyone only in Sing
Nom.	यह, इस ने	वह, उसने	जो जिस ने	सो, तिस ने	कौन, किस ने	कोई, किसी ने
Accus.	वह, इस को	वह, उस को	,, ,, को or जिसे	,, ,, को or तिसे	,, ,, को or किसे	,, किस को
Instr.	इस से	उस से	जिस से	तिस से	किस से	किसी से
Dative.	,, को, के लिये	,, को, के लिये	,, को, के लिये	,, को, के लिये	किसको, के लिये or किसे	,, को, के लिये
Abl.	इस से	उस से	जिस से	तिस से	किस से	,, से
Gen.	इस का, के की	,, का. के. की	जिसका, के, की	,, का, के. की	,, का, के, की	,, का, के की
Loc.	इस में, पर	,, में, पर	जिस में, पर	,, में, पर	,, में, पर	,, में, पर

Plural

Case	Demonstrative		Relative		Interrogetive.
	ये these	वे they	जो who	सो that	कौन who
Nom.	ये, इनने, इन्हों ने	वे उनने or उन्होंने	जो, जिनने or जिन्होंने	सो, तिनने or तिन्होंने	कौन, किनने or किन्होंने
Accus.	ये, इनको, इन्हें	वे, उनको, उन्हें	जो जिनको or जिन्हें	,, तिनको or तिन्हें	,, किनको or किन्होंको
Instr.	इनसे,	उनसे	जिनसे	तिनसे	किन से
Dat.	इन को, के. लिये इन्हें	उनको, के लिये or उन्हें	जिनको. के, लिए or जिन्हें	तिन का, के, लिए or तिन्हें	किन को, के, लिए or किन्हें
Abl.	इन से	उन से	जिनसे	तिनसे	किनसे
Gen.	इन का, के की	,, का, के, की	जिनका, के, की	तिन को, के, की	किन का, के, की
Loc.	इन में, पर	,, में, पर	जिनमें, पर	तिन में, पर	किन में, पर

EXERCISES

1. Give the Hindi for the bold words in the following sentences.

   (*i*) **They** and **these** girls and **you** and **I** will do.

   (*ii*) I have finished reading **all my** books so I want to read **yours.**

   (*iii*) The robber tried to hit **his** (another person's) head with a stone, but hit **his own** instead.

2. Give the Genitive Plural of मैं, तू, वह, आप and Accusative Plural of कौन, जो and Locative Singular of तू, कोई, सो.

3. Correct the following:—

   वह ने इस काम किया है।

   मुझ का बेटा छोटा है।

   क्या मैं तुम के लिये दूध लाऊँ ?

   कोई लड़के को बुलाओ।

   यह कौन का घर है ?

LESSON 20.

Honorific Pronoun.

आप Your Honcur, Your Worship, Sir, etc.

Declension of आप ; —

	Singular and Plural.
Nom.	आप, आपने
Accus.	„ आपको
Inst.	आप से
Dat.	आपको, के लिये
Abl.	आप से
Gen.	आपका, के, की
Loc.	आप में, पर

1 **आप** is used instead of **तुम** in addressing one's superior or by equals when in dignified or respectful conversation.

2. With **आप** as the Subject the Verb is always in the Third Person Plural, e. g.

आप वहाँ कब जावेंगे When will you go there please?

3, Referring to respectable persons **आप** is used instead of **यह** or **वह**, e. g.

ग्रीव्स साहब का जन्म लंदन में [illegible]या था। आपने हिन्दी का एक अच्छा व्याकरण लिखा है। Mr. Greaves was born in London. He has written a very good Grammar in Hindi.

4. Sometimes आपका is used instead of मेरा or हमारा to express admiration, hospitality and affection.

e. g.

यह घर आपका है, जब चाहें पधारें This is your (my) house, come whenever you like or talking of his son he may say यह आपका बेटा है This is your (my) son.

Respectful Forms.

Besides the ordinary form of the Imperative there are three other forms :

1 The Respectful form of the Verb is formed by adding इय to the stem of the Verb :

Verb	Stem	Respectful Forms	
देखना	देख	देखिये	please see
जाना	जा	जाइये	please go
सुनना	सुन	सुनिये	please listen
खाना	खा	खाइये	please eat

2. Some other examples :

देना	दे	दीजिए	please give
करना	कर	कीजिये	please do
लेना	ले	लीजिये	please take
पीना	पी	पीजिये	please drink

3. कीजियेगा is 2nd Person Plural and it means 'please do it'.

This is also a respectful form and can be formed by adding गा to the respectful form of the Imperative :

पढ़ना	पढ़िये + गा	पढ़ियेगा
करना	कीजिये + गा	कीजियेगा

Titles of Respect.

1. जी, साहिब and बाबू are the titles of respect : गुरु जी teacher, पिता जी father, माता जी mother, राजा साहब king, मेमसाहब lady, मकई साहब Mr. Makai, गोपाल बाबू Mr. Gopal, राम बाबू Mr. Ram.
2. श्री is the short form of श्रीमान् (Masculine) and श्रीमती (Feminine) which mean Mr. or Mrs. respectively.
3. Kindly or Please is translated by कृपा कर के or मेहरबानी करके ।

Uses of तू, तुम, आप

तू (thou) indicates disrespect. A man may use it to his wife or child to show more affection and also when he addresses God.

तुम (you) indicates equality or relationship and familiarity. It may be used for children and

young people who would be addressed by their Christian names in English.

आप (you) indicates respect. It is generally used while talking to equals or to those in a superior position and also to subordinates with whose names we should retain Mr. in English.

EXERCISES

1. Translate into English :—

आप अपने घर जाइये

मेरे पिता जी कल आवेंगे

आप कब लौटियेगा ?

कृपा कर के यह चिट्ठी पढ़ दीजिए

गुरु जी कुर्सी पर बैठे हैं

रमेश ने कहा मेरे पिता जी आये हैं

महाराज ! क्या आप मेरे झोंपड़े के भीतर आइयेगा

आप का कहना ठीक है

एक बार महाराजा ने मुझे बुलवा भेजा

आपका जन्म सन् १९०८ ई० में हुआ था

2. Translate into Hindi using Honorific forms throughout :—

Please give me a new book.

How long will you stay here ?

I got a letter from my father.
The King was seated on the throne.
Please allow me to go.

Where do you stay ?
He was born in 1900.
Our teacher was teaching us.
Sir, we will enter your house.
The boy said that his elder brother was coming.

LESSON 21

Reflexive Pronoun.

1. आप, अपना and अपने आप are Reflexive pronouns corresponding to English words self or own.
2. They are applicable to all the Three Persons when they refer to the Subject of the main Verb.
3. अपना (Apna) is a Genitive and should be treated as an Adjective and must agree in Gender and Number with the Noun it qualifies It is important to remember that it has no connection with the Number and Gender of the Subject

Examples :

I open **my** book. मै अपनी पुस्तक खोलता हूँ

He opens **his** book. वह अपनी पुस्तक खोलता है .

She opens **her** book. वह अपनी पुस्तक खोलती है

You open **your** book. तुम अपनी पुस्तक खोलते हो

They open **their** books. वे अपनी पुस्तकें खोलते हैं

We all open **our** books. हम अपनी पुस्तकें खोलते हैं

Read the above sentences and notis how one word अपनी is used for my, his, her, your, their and our. Sometimes स्वयं, खुद, निज are used instead of अपना e.g. आप स्वयं you yourself, वह स्वयं he himself, मैं खुद I myself, निजका own.

The Reflexive आप

The Reflexive आप (ap) means self and अपने आप means myself, himself, herself, itself and themselves.

	आप (Singular)	अपने आप (Sing.)
Nominative	आप or आपने	अपने आप (never used with ने)
Accu. & Dat.	अपने को, के लिए	अपने आप को, के लिए
Instr. & Abl.	अपने से	अपने आप से
Genitive	अपना, ने, नी	अपने आपका, के, की
Locative	अपने में, पर	अपने आप में, पर

Examples:

राजा आप आये	The king **himself** came.
मैं अपने आप आऊंगा	I shall come **myself.**
वह लड़की अपने आप पढ़ने लगी	The girl began to read **herself.**

आप क्रोध में अपने को भूल जाते हैं You forget **yourself** when you are angry.

सब अपने अपने घर चले गये All went to their **own** houses.

मेरा नौकर भाग गया था परन्तु वह आप ही आप आया
My servant had run away but he came back of his **own** accord.

सब लड़के अपने अपने घर गये
All boys went to their **own** houses.

Use of आपस, परस्पर, एक दूसरा

यह आपस में (instead of अपने में) बांट लो
Share it out **among yourselves**

तुम्हें आपस की लड़ाई आपस में ही निबटा लेनी चाहिए
You should settle your dispute **among yourselves.**

चोर परस्पर सहायता करते हैं Thieves help **one another**.

भले आदमी एक दूसरे की मदद करते हैं
Good people help **one another.**

EXERCISES.

1 Translate the bold words in the following and state which are Honorific, Relative and Possessive Pronouns:

(i) O Pandit! I tell **you** that. Mohan burnt **his** fingers, and Sohan poured oil on **his** (Mohan's) hand.

(ii) O King! **you** will see **your** son getting off **his** horse and ordering **his** food to be given **him**.

(iii) Sit down and take off **your** shoes and then take off **your** brother's shoes. Now put away **his** shoes and **yours**. (iv) The robber tried to hit **his** head with a stone but hit **his own** instead.

2. Translate into English :—

वह बाजा अपने आप बज रहा है।

तुम्हारी आयु क्या है?

राजा साहब अपने महल में बैठे हैं।

सब लड़के अपने अपने घर चले गये हैं।

आपस में झगड़ा मत करो।

वह अपने घर में किसी को नहीं आने देता।

घोड़ा आप से आप दौड़ने लगा।

अपने पर भरोसा रख कर काम करो।

आप स्वयं (अपने आप) वहाँ जाकर देखिये।

लड़की ने चाकू से अपना हाथ स्वयं काट लिया।

3. Translate into Hindi :—

The boys have gone to their houses.
He sold his (own) car.
He sold his (another person's) car.
They fed themselves well.
The king is talking about himself.
Don't converse among yourselves.
I saw the thief myself.

William cut his finger himself.
I myself bandaged his hand.
All of you should mind your work.

LESSON 22

Interrogative and Relative Pronouns,

INTERROGATIVE & RELATIVE

कौन ? क्या ?

The Interrogative Pronoun कौन (who, which) is generally used in respect of person and large things and क्या (what) mostly in respect to small things and animals. This distinction, however is not exclusively maintained. The following notes will indicate their principal usage.

कौन (who, which)

1. In questions, in respect to persons, things or qualities for the sake of ascertainment, e. g.

रास्ते पर कौन जा रहा है?	WHO is going along the road ?
इन खिलौनों में से कौन मेरे लिये है ?	WHICH of these toys are meant for me ?
ऐसे गुण किसमें पाये जाते हैं?	WHO possesses such qualities ?

2. In questions demanding a definition :

कारक किसे कहते हैं ?	WHAT is a case ?

3. To express blood relationship :

सोहन आपका कौन होता है ?

How is Sohan related to you ?

4. To express kind or pedigree :

यह कौन आदमी है अंग्रेज, कि फाँसीसी?

Who is this man English or French ?

5 To express a depreciation or contempt and imports the idea 'what right', 'on what authority'.

तुम मुझे सलाह देने वाले कौन हो ?

WHAT RIGHT have you to advise me ?

6. As an adverb of particularization.

यह कौनसा बड़ी बात है It is not an important matter.

7. It is repeated to express plurality and depreciation.

उन लड़कों में से कौन कौन यहाँ आये हैं ?

Which of the boys have come here ?

8, To express grief or surprise :

हाय ! कौन मुझे इस विपत्ति से बचायगा !

Oh ! who will save me from this trouble !

क्या WHAT

क्या is not capable of declension. In colloquial however, काहे को 'what for, काहे से with what, is used.

The following are the principal uses of :

1 क्या as an Interrogative :

(i) Pure Interrogation :

यह क्या है ? What is this ?

तुम्हारा नाम क्या है ? What is your name ?

(ii) In respect to price :

आप के घोड़े का दाम क्या है ?

What is ths price of your horse ?

(iii) To express contempt, admiration or surprise.

अहा ! क्या सुन्दर फूल है !

Ah ! what a beautiful flower !

2. As a sign of interrogation क्या is untranslated

क्या वह आया है ? Has he come ?

In colloquial क्या is often dropped out and an inquisitive mode is adopted :

तुम वहां गये ? Did you go there ?

3. क्या क्या implies 'what things severally or respectively'.

उसने क्या क्या कहा ? What things did he say ?

क्या क्या हुआ मुझे बताओ Tell me what happened ?

टोकरी में क्या क्या बेचने लाये हो ? What things have you in your basket for sale ?

4. In the sense of 'whether or both' क्य—क्या e.g. क्या मनुष्य क्या पशु सब बाढ़ में डूब गये
Whether men or animals all were drowned in the flood.

5. क्या से क्या indicates a complete change. e g.
वह क्या से क्या होगया He changed altogether.

RELATIVE PRONOUN

जो WHICH

1. The Relative जो is followed by a Corelative स and is used both in respect of persons and things.
जो पुस्तक मैंने तुम्हें दी थी वह कहाँ है ?
Where is the book that I had given you ?

2. In oblique form the Singular is जिस and the Plural is जिन or जिन्हों. The latter is not very commonly used.

3. जो जो is used distributively, e. g. जो जो खरीदना हो सो खरीदो। Buy all that you want.

EXERCISES

1. Translate into English :

१ यह लड़का कौन है ?

२ कौनसी पुस्तक तुम्हारी है ?

३ कौन कौन लड़के वहाँ जायंगे ?

४ ये सब मकान किनके हैं ?

५ तुम किसकी राह देखते हो ?

६ दरवाज़ा कौन खटखटा रहा है ?

७ यह कौन आदमी, हिन्दुस्तानी या अंग्रेज ?

८ उसने क्या किया था ?

९ क्या उसने तुमको मारा है ?

१० क्या स्त्री क्या पुरुष सब उस मेले में गये ?

११ जो पढ़ता है वह (सो) अवश्य पास होता हैं ।

१२ जो पुस्तक तुम पढ़ते थे सो कहां है ?

2 Transite into Hindi :

1. Who are you ?
2. Whose books are these ?
3. Which is new ?
4. Will you come to-morrow ?
5. What do you want ?
6. Which ot these are black ?
7. What can I do for you ?
8. Who has called you ?
9. What were you reading ?
10. Did you come to school yesterday ?
11 Where is your brother who came here yesterday ?
12. He who goes, sees.

3 Read the following sentences and explain the meaning of क्या in each case : --

क्या आज गर्मी पड़ रही है ?
आप भी क्या आदमी हैं ?

वह क्या ही मूर्ख है ?

वह क्या लड़ेगा ?

मैं यह क्या बैठा हूँ, इधर क्यों नहीं आते ?

तुम्हारे पास क्या वह आएगा ?

क्या वह जायगा ?

LESSON 23.

DEFINITE (DEMONSTRATIVE) PRONOUNS

यह this and **वह** that

Mr. Mc Millan says " 'yah' and 'wah' are used for persons as well as things, and that without reference to gender. **This is a fundamental difference from European languages, that needs to be grasped.** In English, the 3rd Personal Pronoun (he, she or it) does indicate its Gender. In Hindustani it is left to the Adjective or Verb to show whether a Masculine or Feminine person or Object is referred to".

1. **यह** (this) is the near Demonstrative and is used to indicate persons and things at close proximity.

   वह (that) is the remote Demonstrative and is used to indicate persons or things at a distance or in absence.

2. यह and वह are inflected as an Adjective :

यह लड़का this boy. वह लड़का that boy

ये लड़के these boys. वे लड़के those boys.

इस लड़के का पिता this boy's father.

उस लड़के का पिता that boy's father.

इन लड़कों के नाम these boys' names.

उन लड़कों के नाम those boys' name.

Note —It should be noted here that when they are used adjectively the Case-sign appears only with the Noun. It is dropped from the Pronoun.

3 The Genitive case is inflected to show the Gender and Case :

इस की or उस की बहिन His sister.

इस का or उस का भाई His brother.

इस के or उस के घोड़े His horses.

4. The Plural forms of यह (ये) and वह (वे) are used to express plurality and respect :

ये हमारे गुरुजी हैं He is our teacher.

उन का घर कहाँ है ? Where is his house ?

EMPHATIC FORMS.

5. The Emphatic form is made by adding ही or ई in the Singular and ही in the Plural.

यही आदमी	This very man.
वही कपड़ा	The same cloth.
इस ने किया	He did it.
इन्हीं लोगों ने किया	These people did it.

EXERCISES

1. Translate into English : –

वह तैरना जानता है।

यह चिट्ठी डाक में डाल दो।

यह देखिये गाड़ी आरही है।

उस बड़ मेज पर भोजन रखो।

इस सन्दूक में रेशमी कपड़े हैं?

क्या उन्होंने इसे खरीद लिया है?

उसने स्कूल क्यों छोड़ दिया?

इस आदमी की लड़की अस्पताल में है।

क्या तुमको यह जगह पसंद है?

वह आदमी बनारस से यहाँ आया है।

2. Translate into Hindi :—

When did he come here?

Do they know swimming?

This girl's brother will come tomorrow.

He bought 3 big boxes.

Who are these people?

His brother is still in hospital.

Look, the car is coming.

This is her book not yours.

How do you like this city ?

That is a very big table.

LESSON 24

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS कोई (any) and कुछ (some)

कोई any, anything, any body etc.

1. कोई is declined in the Singular Number only, and is chrnged into किसी in oblique cases.

2 कोई कोई expresses distribution e.g. :

कोई कोई लोग कहते हैं	Some people say,
किसी किसी देश में	In some countries.

3. कोई is used for 'some one', one, certain etc. e g

दरवाजे पर कोई खड़ा है

SOME ONE is standing on the door.

कोई महाशय आपसे मिलना चाहते हैं

ONE gentleman wants to see you.

कोई आदमी राजा से मिलने गया

A CERTAIN man went to see the king.

4. कोई is used as an Honorific Pronoun and takes Plural Verb, e.g.

कोई आपके पिताजी से मिलने आये हैं

SOME ONE has come to see your father.

5. To emphasize the sense of indefiniteness e. g.

पेड़ पर कुछ आम पके हैं. उनमें से कोई सा ले लो

There are some ripe mangoes on the tree, take ANY of them.

6. कोई–कोई in two consecutive clauses may be translated as 'one—other'.

कोई कमाता है, कोई खाता है।

ONE earns money and the OTHER spends (eats) it.

7. Prefixed to Numerals it imports the idea of approximation :

कोई दस आदमी सभा में आये।

ABOUT ten persons come to the meeting.

Certain other Phrases and Idioms:

कोई न कोई	some one, one or other
किसी न किसी	,,
कोई नहीं	no body
सब कोई	every body
हर कोई	,,

कोई दूसरा, कोई और. और कोई, दूसरा कोई anyother e.g.

कोई है ?	Is there any one: (within hearing, in attendance or about) ?
कोई हो !	Whoever it may be !

कुछ

Unlike कोई, कुछ is incapable of declension Its meaning is represented in English by such words and phrases as any, some, a little, anything, something, some what, whatever, partly.

The following points should be noted about कुछ

1. It may be used to indicate some previously unknown thing, small insects and animals, e.g.

झाड़ी में दिखाई देता है something is seen in the bush.
जल में कुछ चल रहा है some insect is crawling in the water.

2. To indicate a report or rumour, e.g.

क्या आपने उसके विषय में कुछ सुना ?
Did you hear ANY THING about him?

3. For 'nothing' or little' in the negative sentences :

तुम्हारा यहां कुछ भी नहीं है You have nothing here.

4. As an Adverb :

यह कुछ छोटा है This is a bit smaller.

5. As an Adjective :

इस बाग में कुछ पेड़ तो सूख गए हैं और कुछ सूखने वाले हैं।
In this garden SOME trees are already withered, SOME are on the point of withering.

6. कुछ followed by कुछ in a seperate clause often expresses an Antithesis, e.g.

तू बोलता कुछ है और करता कुछ है

You say onething and do another.

7. कुछ is often used for 'some' or 'a few' e.g.

कुछ लोग समझते हैं SOME people think.

CERTAIN IDIOMS

कुछ से कुछ होना	to be entirely changed.
कुछ कुछ	more or less, a little.
कुछ का कुछ	in a different manner.
कुछ न कुछ	something or other
बहुत कुछ	a great deal
सब कुछ	everything,
जो कुछ	whatever.
और कुछ	a little more, something additional.
कुछ और	" "
कुछ दिन से	for some days.
कुछ अच्छा	better.
कुछ बीमार	somewhat unwell.
कुछ एक	some few ; a few.
कुछ परवाह नहीं	it does not matter.
कुछ हो	whatever may happen.
जो कुछ भी हो	"

EXERCISES

1. Translate into English :

क्या घर में कोई आदमी है ?

यहाँ तो कभी कोई लड़की नहीं आती।

कोई महाशय राजासाहब से मिलने आए हैं।

उसकी बहिन कई दिन से कुछ बीमार है।

इस पेड़ पर कुछ पक्के फल हैं और कुछ कच्चे।

यदि वह राम नहीं था तो वह कोई और होगा।

वह सुनता कुछ है और लिखता कुछ है।

यह छड़ी उस छड़ी से कुछ छोटी है।

किसी किसी देश में बड़ा जाड़ा पड़ता है।

कोई पन्द्रह आदमी वहाँ आए थे।

2. **Translate into Hindi.**

There is on body in the house

Some one has come to see you.

Did you hear any news about your father?

This hat is bigger than that.

Some people think themselves wise.

About fifty people came to his house.

I saw no one there.

Some flowers are quite nice but some are rotten.

Is there any fruit in this tree?

I want something to eat now.

LESSON 25

PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES

"The Pronominal Adjectives are, as the name signifies, Adjectives formed from the Pronouns. In many instances they are used alone, with a Noun understood; in such cases they are declined as Nouns, otherwise as Adjectives of two terminations. In not a few instances, these words are distinctly Adverbial in their use." —Greave.

The following table will sum up all such Pronouns :

	Cardinal Pronoun	Exprsseive of Quantity	Expressive of Quality
Near Demonstrative	यह	इतना this quantity	ऐसा this like
Remote	वह	उतना that "	वैसा that "
Relative	जो	जितना which "	जैसा which "
Correlative	सो	तितना such "	तैसा such "
Interrogative	कौन	कितना what "	कैसा what "

The following points should be noted here.

1. As Pronouns they may be followed by a Postpostion.

इतने से मेरा काम नहीं चलेगा

This much will not serve my purpose.

2. In the Plural Number they mostly refer to persons only.

कितने तो सभा में न आसके Several people could not come to the meeting.

3. इतना, उतना, कितना, जितना, in the locative case expresses time, price and quantity. e g.

इतने में वह वहां आ पहुंचा Meanwhile he reached there.

यह घोड़ा कितने में दोगे ? How much do you demand for this horse?

जितने में उसने जमीन खरीदी उतने में मैं भी खरीदता

sI alo would have bought the land for the price he had bought it.

4. ऐसा and वैसा may be used in the sense of Cardinal Pronouns यह and वह

ऐसा हो सकता है This is quite possible.

वैसा नहीं हो सकता है That is not possible.

AS ADJECTIVES

5. As Adjectives they are subject to inflexion, e.g.

कितनी बड़ी पोथी ! What a big book !

कैसी भोली लड़की ! How innocent is the girl !

ऐसी अंधेरी रात में ! In such a dark night !

As Adverbs they are generally inflected to ए

तुम कैसे आये How did you come ?

OTHER PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES

अनेक	several, many.
अमुक	a certain person.
और	another.
अन्य	other, different, another.
पराया, दूसरा	"
सारा समूचा	all, the whole
सब के सब	all, the whole lot.
एक	a or, one, person or thing.
प्रत्येक	each one.
बहुतेरा	many
आदि	and the other, the rest.
इत्यादि	etc.

EXERCISES

1. Translate into English.

आप इतना डरते क्यों हैं ?

उसे कितना रुपया रोज़ मिलता है ?

पुस्तकालय में सब कितनी पुस्तकें होंगी ?

किसने ऐसा किया है ?

यह आम का पेड़ कैसा है ?

ऐसा बदमाश लड़का यहां कोई नहीं है ?

कल सभा में कितने लोग आये थे।

आज कैसा सुंदर दिन है ?

इतने अच्छे अंगूर हम ने कभी नहीं खाये।

यह बाजा आपको कितने में मिला।

Translate into Hindi:—

How much are you ready to pay for it ?

What sort of man is he ?

I cannot find such a friend as you.

What a lovely night this is !

Meanwhile a man came there.

How many books have you read in Hindi ?

What kind is this house ?

We never saw such sweea-meats before.

How much is he getting eveey month ?

Why are you trembling so much ?



CHAPTER VI

PARTICIPLES

LESSON 26.

PARTICIPLES

Principle Parts of the Verb.

Hindi verbs have four principle parts.

1. **The Infinite** ends in ना as in पढ़ना to read देखना to see, आना to come.

2. **The Root** (Stem) drops the last ना of the Infinitive : --

पढ़ना	—	पढ़	read
देखना	—	देख	see
आना	—	आ	come

3. **The Imperfect** (Present) **Participle** adds ता to the root :—

पढ़	—	पढ़ता	reading
देख	--	देखता	seeing
आ	—	आता	coming

4. **The Perfect (Past) Participle** adds आ to the root if it ends in a consonat :—

देख	—	देखा	saw, seen
पढ़	—	पढ़ा	read

ii) But adds या to the root if it ends in a vowel :—

आ		आया	came, come
सो		सोया	slept
खा	—	खाया	ate, eaten

(iii) Some Perfect Participles are formed irregularly.

VERB	PERFECT PARTICIPLE	
	MAS,	FEM.
जाना to go	गया went, gone	गई
करना to do	किया did, done	की
होना to be	हुवा been	हुई
लेना to take	लिया took taken	ली
देना to give	दिया gave, given	दी

EXERCISES

1. Give the stems of the तोड़ना to break, हाँकना to drive. गाना to sing, जलाना to light.
2. What are the Imperfect Participles of चढ़ना to climb. बैठना to sit, थूकना to spit, ठहरना to stay.
3. Form Perfect Participle from फैलना to spread, चुराना to steal, बेचना to sell, काम करना to work. भिगोना to wet, फाड़ना to tear.

INTRANSITIVE

Verb		Root	Imperfect Participle	Perfect Participle
आना	to come	आ	आता	आया
चलना	to move	चल	चलता	चला
जाना	to go	जा	जाता	गया
सोना	to sleep	सो	सोता	सोया
रोना	to cry	रो	रोता	रोया
बैठना	to sit	बैठ	बैठता	बैठा
दौड़ना	to run	दौड़	दौड़ता	दौड़ा
खेलना	to play	खेल	खेलता	खेला
गिरना	to lall	गिन	गिनता	गिना
होना	to be	हो	होता	हुआ
हंसना	to laugh	हंस	हंसता	हंसा
उठना	to rise	उठ	उठता	उठा
ठहरना	to stay	ठहर	ठहरता	ठहरा
तैरना	to swim	तैर	तैरता	तैरा
चढ़ना	to climb	चढ़	चढ़ता	चढ़ा
चमकना	to shine	चमक	चमकता	चमका
नाचना	to dance	नाच	नाचता	नाचा
कूदना	to jump	कूद	कूदता	कूदा
लेटना	to lie	लेट	लेटता	लेटा
थूकना	to spit	थूक	थूकता	थूका

TRANSITIVE

Verb		Root	Imperfect Participle	Perfect Participle
खाना	to eat	खा	खाता	खाया
करना	to do	कर	करता	किया
देखना	to see	देख	देखता	देखा
पढ़ना	to read	पढ़	पढ़ता	पढ़ा
लिखना	to write	लिख	लिखता	लिखा
पीना	to drink	पी	पीता	पीया
पहनना	to put on	पहन	पहनता	पहना
मारना	to beat	मार	मारता	मारा
धोना	to wash	धो	धोता	धोया
पकडना	to catch	पकड़	पकड़ता	पकड़ा
देना	to give	दे	देता	दिया
सीखना	to learn	सीख	सीखता	सीखा
भेजना	to send	भेज	भेजता	भेजा
गाना	to sing	गा	गाता	गाया
चुराना	to steal	चुरा	चुराता	चुराया
ढोना	to carry	ढो	ढोता	ढोया
सीना	to sew	सी	सीता	सीया
खोदना	to dig	खोद	खोदता	खोदा
काटना	to cut	काट	काटता	काटा
सुनना	to hear	सुन	सुनता	सुना

LESSON 27

USES OF PARTICIPLES.

In Hindi the Imperfect Participle is used in a sentence to qualify (i) a Noun (ii) an Adjective and (iii) a verb.

1. To Qualify a Noun :

It is not very common to use a Participle as a Noun but some times we find this use in phrases. e. g,

बना बनाया ready made

सुनी सुनाई बात hearsay, rumour

किये का फल (lit. fruit of action) reward or penalty of action.

2. To Qualify an Adjective :

As an Adjective it agrees with the Noun in Number and Gender and usually followed by हुआ, हुए or हुई as the case may be e g,

रोता हुआ बालक a crying child.

दौड़ती हुई गाड़ी a runnin train.

मरा हुआ कुत्ता a dead dog.

फले हुये पेड़ trees laiden with fruits.

3 To Qualify a Verb :

As a Verb it is used in Adverbial clauses

To express condition or state and agrees with the Noun it qualifies :

एक लड़का खेलता हुआ किसी जङ्गल के पास जा निकला

A boy reached near a forest PLAYING.

वहां उसने एक जोड़े जूते पड़े हुए देखे

There he saw a pair of shoes LYING ABOUT.

USE OF बिना (WITHOUT) AND ही (ON THE POINT OF)

1. USE OF बिना

बिना is used with a Perfect Participle (in inflected form) e.g.

बिना पूछे	without having asked.
बिना देखे	" " seen,
बिना कहे	" " said,

2. USE OF ही

2. The imperfect Participle in (inflected form) with **ही** means **'on the point of'**. The subject of the Participle uses the Post-phsition **का** (Genitive case) : Such sentences should be translated by such phrases as "no sooner" and "as soon as"

मास्टर साहब के आते ही लड़के चुप हो गए

As soon as the teacher came the boys became quite,

REPETITION OF PARTICIPLES

Sometimes an imperfect Participle, (in inflected form) is repeated when used in a sentence :

लड़की दौड़ती दौड़ती चली आई   A girl came running.
लड़के दौड़ते दौड़ते चले आये   Boys came running.

WITHOUT ADDING हुआ ETC.

Sometimes an Imperfect Participle is used wiihout adding हुआ, हुए; or हुई.

लड़की दौड़ती चली आई   A girl came running
लड़के दौड़ते चले आये   Boys came running.
लड़का दौड़ता चला आया   A boy came running.

EXERCISES

2. Translate into English—

१. एक मरा हुआ कुत्ता सड़क पर पड़ा था।

२. हम सब खेलते खेलते थक गये हैं।

३. सीलीगोडी के पासदो आदमी दौड़ती हुई गाड़ीसे कूद पड़े

४. सिपाही लाल पगड़ी पहने हुए थे।

५. उसको रुपयों से भरी हुई थैली मिली।

६. गुरु जी कुर्सी पर बैठे लिखते थे।

७. लड़के अपने अपने बस्ते लिये हुए स्कूल में जा रहे थे

८. गुरु जी के कमरे में आते ही सब लड़के खड़े हो गये।

९. बहते हुए पानी में नहाना चाहिए।

१० बिना पूछे भीतर मत आओ।

1. Translate in to Hindi—

1, *A* dead tiger is lying on the ground,

2. Wash it in the flowing water.

3. Take ten rupees out of the bag which is open.
4. As soon as he saw me he ran away.
5. My brother was reading a book lying on his bed.
6. Don't touch a dead dog.
7. He got up as soon as I went there.
8. He jumped out of the running train.
9. Don't go out without asking me. (my permission)
10. I gave him a book without his asking.

LESSON 28.

The Conjuctive Participle.

The Conjunctive Participle is known in Hindi Grammar as पूर्वकालिक क्रिया--the Verb which deals with the past tense. It economises the use of Verbs and simplifies what English is expressed at greater length. There are four forms :

(1) कर (*Kar*) is added to the root जा+कर=जाकर =Having gone

(2) के (*Ke*) „ „ जा+के=जाके

(3) करके (*Karke*) „ „ जा+करके=जाकरके

(4) Sometimes it is identical with the root of the Verb.

जा Having gone

खा Having eaten.

Uses of Conjunctive Participle

The Conjunctive Participle is used :

1. When two sentences are joined by the Conjunction '*and*' in English :

   He rose and went away. वह उठ कर चला गया

2. When Adverbial Clause of time English e. g. :

   When he saw me, he called me

   मुझ को देखकर उसने मुझे बुलाया।

3. When Imperfect Participle or Gerund is used in English :

   He reading a book sitting on a chair.

   वह कुर्सी पर बैठकर पुस्तक पढ़ रहा है।

4. When Adverbial Phrases are used in English :

Kindly	दया कर के
Secretly	छिपकर के

EXERCISES

1 Translate into English :

१ वह सवेरे उठकर पुस्तक पढ़ता है।

२ हेडमास्टर को देखकर लड़के काँपने लगे।

३ लड़कियाँ मैदान में आकर खेलने लगीं।

४ बवर्ची ने रोटी पकाकर बच्चों को खिलाई।

५ हम जंगल में जाकर लकड़ी बटोरेंगे।

६ उसकी बहिन ने एक चिट्ठी लिखकर दिल्ली भेजी।

७ पढ़ने के बाद सब खा पीकर सो गये।

2 Translate into Hindi :

1. Open your book and read.
2. Write the letter and post it.
3. They went out and played.
4. They cooked and ate the rice.
5. I set at the table to eat my dinner.
6. Will you go to your teacher and ask.
7. He came and helped me.

LESSON 29.

Infinitives

1. The Infinitives may denote either Present or Past Tense. It has the characteristics of a Noun and a Verb. Like other Nouns it is declined in all the caces in Singular only except the Vocative Cases.

Nom. राम का पढ़ना अच्छा है। Ram's reading is good.

Acc. मैं राम का पढ़ना सुनता हूँ। I hear Ram's reading

Inst राम पढ़ने से पंडित हो गया Ram became learned by reading.

Dat. राम पढ़ने के लिये आया है Ram has come to read.

Abl. राम पढ़ने से भागता है Ram shirks reading.
(*lit.* runs away from reading).

Gen. राम के पढ़ने का ढंग अच्छा है Ram's style of reading is good.

Loc. राम पढ़ने में अच्छा है Ram is good at reading.

Note.—Sometimes को and के लिये are omitted as
राम पढ़ने आया हैं; वह खाने आया है etc.

2. The Infinitive with the Postposition पर, when used with the Verb होना (*to be*) means either finishing a thing or action which is about to take place e.g,

मेरे आने पर वह आया	He came after me.
राम पढ़ने पर था	Ram was just on the point of reading.

3, As a Verb it is used as an Imperative

रात को मत पढ़ना	Do not read in the night
शराब मत पीना	Do not drink wine.

Note—As compared with the ordinary form of the Imparative it expresses an advice rather than a command.

4, If it is used with चाहिए, होना or पड़ना it expresses an obligation or necessity.

मुझे पढ़ना चाहिए I should read

उसको पढ़ना पड़ा He had to read
तुमको पढ़ना होगा You shall have to read

EXERCISES

1. Translate into English :
   १ मैं स्टेशन पर जाने के लिए आया हूँ।
   २ कलकत्ता की गाड़ी छूटने पर है।
   ३ फिर यहाँ कभी मत आना।
   ४ हरि घोड़े पर चढ़ना पसंद करता है।
   ५ लिली के पढ़ने पर शीला पढ़ने लगी।
   ६ मैंने उसे जाने को कहा।
   ७ अब देर करना अच्छा नहीं।
   ८ मैं खिड़की पर टिकट खरीदने गया।
   ९ तुमको अब सोना चाहिये।
   १० सब लड़कों को यह लिखना पड़ेगा।

2. Translate into Hindi :
   1. I heard the ringing of the bell.
   2. I must go now.
   3. He is ready to go to the station.
   4. He was about to come to my house.
   5. The boy shirks reading.
   6. My brother is good at writing.
   7. You will have to do it.
   8. They wish to learn Hindi.
   9. He has gone to buy a new book.
   10. I hear the reading of the children.



CHAPTER VII.

VERBS

LESSON 30

Verbs (क्रिया)

Two main kinds of Verbs.

Principal Verbs (as distinguished from auxilary होना to be are divided into two main classes :

(1) Transitive Verbs (with objects) सकर्मक

(2) Intransitive Verbs (without objects) अकर्मक

In sentences like मेरा पिता सोता है My father is sleeping; कुत्ता भोंकता है dog barks, each of the Verbs with its subject makes a complete statement. But there are many groups of words like—

1. The man eats आदमी................खाता है

2. The theif stole चोर ने................चुराया

3. He opens वह................खोलता है

where the verb does not by itself make up a complete pradication, but requires some objects like (1) bread रोटी (2) my money (मेरा पैसा)

(3) the door (दरवाजा) to make the sentence complete.

The sentences in the former group are Intransitive and the latter are Transitive.

Two Objects (द्विकर्मक)

Sometimes Verbs take two Objects :

"I gave him one rupee.
मैं ने उस को एक रुपया दिया

Intransitive		Transitive	
होना	to be	खाना	to eat
सोना	to sleep	पीना	to drink
जागना	to wake	जाना	to go
बढ़ना	to grow	पकड़ना	to catch
मरना	to die	पढ़ना	to read
जीना	to live	पहनना	to wear
रोना	to cry	धोना	to wash
खेलना	to play	करना	to do
चमकना	to shine	पकना	to cook
गिरना	to fall	लिखना	to write
जलना	to burn	देखना	to see
जागना	to raise	बुलाना	to call

EXERCISES

1. Read the following sentences and say what Verbs are Transitive and what are Intransitive in each Case.

राम बन को जाता है।

शीला घर में सोती है।

रमेश कपड़े पहनता है।

नाई हजामत बनाता है।

लड़के गुल्ली डंडा खेल रहे हैं।

आज उसका भाई यहाँ आया था।

यह मेज लकड़ी की बनी हुई है।

मेरे बाबू जी मेरे लिए एक गेंद लाये हैं।

2. Fill up the blanks.

लड़का········पीता है।

लड़कियाँ········बुन रही हैं।

शेर ने········मार डाला।

विलियम ने········मोल ली है।

हम········धो डालें गे।

मैं ने कल········खाया।

LESSON 31.

Verb, Moods, Tenses, Numder, Person, Cender.

Moods. There is no equivalent for Mood in Hindi Grammar. There are Moods but the Tenses are not arranged with reference to any Mood.

Tenses. In Hindi tense means काल. There are three main Tenses like English *i e.* Present, Past and Future. Generally है (is) हैं (are) are used with the Present Tense था or थो (was) or थे or थीं (were) or only Perfect Participles such as आया (came), गया (went) with the Past Tense; and गा, गे, गी with the Future Tense.

Number. The Hindi Verb has two Numbers, Singular and Plural.

. There are three Persons, *i. e.* first second and third.

First Person	is the person speaking मैं I, हम we,
Second „	is the person spoken to तू thou, तुम you,
Third „	is the person spoken about वह he, she and it; वे they

GENDER. There are two Genders Masculin and Feminine. In most parts of the Verb the form is affected by Number. Person and Gender. It is important to remember that English Verbs have no Gender but Hindi

Verbs always change their Gender with the Nouns they qualify.

Thus लड़का जाता है A boy is going
But लड़की जाती है A girl is going.

EXERCISE

1. Translate the following sentences into English and point out the Gender of the Verbs

वह पढ़ता है ।
वह पढ़ता होगा ।
लड़की पढ़ती थी ।
हम घर जावेंगे ।
वे अपने घर गये ।
वे आदमी रोटी खाते थे ।
मैं ने बहुत लड्डू खाये हैं ।
लड़कियाँ दौड़ेंगी ।
बैल कहां चरता था ?
वे खेत में हैं ।



LESSON 32.

Imperfect Tenses.

Auxiliary Verb होना --*to be*

Present Tense (both Genders)

Person	Singular	Plural
1st	मैं हूँ I am	हम हैं we are
2nd	तू है thou art	तुम हो you are
3rd	वह है he, she, it, is	वे हैं they are

Past Tense

Person	Singular Mas.	Singular Fem.	Plural Mas.	Plural Fem.
1st	मैं था,	थी I was	हम थे,	थीं we were
2nd	तू था,	थी thou wert	तुम थे,	थीं you were
3rd	वह था,	थी he she and it was	वे थे,	थीं they were

1 **The Present Imperfect Tense** is formed by adding to the Imperfect Participle the Present Tense of the Auxiliary Verb होना (to be)

2. **The Past Imperfect Tense** is formed by adding to the Imperfect Participle the Past Tense of the Auxiliary Verb था (was)

3. When in agreement with a **Feminine Noun** the forms are जाती हूँ, जाती थी

Present Imperfect Tense

Person	Masculine		Feminine	
	Sing.	Plural	Sing.	Plural
1st	मैं जाता हूं I am going	हम जाते हैं We are going	मैं जाती हूं I am going	हम जाती हैं We are going
2nd	तू जाता है Thou art going	तुम जाते हो You are going	तू जाती है Thou art going	तुम जाती हो You are going
3rd	वह जाता है He is going	वे जाते हैं They are going	वह जाती है She is going	वे जाती हैं They were going

Past Imperfect Tense

1st	मैं जाता था I was going	हम जाते थे We were going	मैं जाती थी I was going	हम जाती थीं We were going
2nd	तू जाता था Thou we- rt going	तुम जाते थे You were going	तू जाती थी Thou we- rt going	तुम जाती थीं You were going
3rd	वह जाताथा He was going	वे जाती थीं They were going	वह जातीथी She was going	वे जाते थे They were going

EXERCISE

1. Say the Present Tense and the Past Tense of होना (to be)
2. Write out the Present Imperfect Tense of the Verb. आना (to come), पढ़ना (to read), खेलना to play; in the Masculine and खाना (to eat), दौड़ना (to run) and जाना (to go) in the Feminine.
3. Translate into Hindi :-
   1. Two boys are going.
   2. The woman is coming.
   3. Dogs are barking.
   4. They were reading.
   5. She is speaking.
   6. The birds are flying.
   7. They are oxen.
   8. You are writing.
   9. Thou art going.
   10. The loaves on the table.
   11. Those girls were reading.
   12. He puts on clean clothes.

LESSON 33.

Perfect Tenses.

(Intransitive Verbs)

Tenses formed from the Perfect Participles are called *Perfect Tenses.*

1. **The Present Perfect Tense** is formed by

adding the Auxiliary Verb होना (to be) to the Perfect Participle as मैं आया हूँ I have come.

2. **The Past Perfect Tense** is formed by adding था (was) to the Perfect Participle as मैं आया था I had come.

3. **The Past Indefinite** is formed Without adding any other Verb to the Perfect Participle as मैं आया I came.

4. **When in agreement with a Feminine Noun** the forms are आयी हूँ, आयी थी and आयी

Present Perfect Tense

आना *to come*

Person	Masculine		Feminine	
	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
1st	मैं आया हूँ I have come	हम आये हैं We have come	मैं आयी हूँ I have come	हम आयी हैं We have come
2nd	तू आया है Thou hast come	तुम आये हो You have come	तू आयी है Thou hast come	तुम आयी हो You have come
3rd	वह आया है He has come	वे आये हैं They have come	वह आयी है She has come	वे आयी हैं They have come

Past Perfect Tense

आना (to come)

Person	Masculine Sing.	Masculine Plural	Feminine Sing.	Feminine Plural
1st	मै आयाथा I had come	हम आये थे We had come	मैं आयी थी I had come	हम आयी थीं We had come
2nd	तू आया था Thou hadst come	तुम आये थे You had come	तू आयी थी Thouhad-st come	तुम आयी थीं You had come
3rd	वह आयाथा He had come	वे आये थे They had come	वह आयीथी She had come	वे आयी थीं They had come

Past Indefinite

1st	मैं आया I came	हम आये We came	मैं आयी I came	हम आयीं We came
2nd	तू आया Thou camest	तुम आये You came	तू आयी Thou camest	तुम आतीं You came
3rd	वह आया He came	वे आये They came	वह आयी She came	वे आयीं They came

EXERCISES

1. Translate into English. (Oral)

१ मोहन अपनी जगह पर बैठ गया।

२ वह अपनी जगह पर बैठ गया।

३ मैं कल नौ बजे रात को सोया था।

४ उसका मकान गिर गया है।

५ वह अपने घर का रास्ता भूल गया।

६ कल वह सारे दिन सोया।

७ वह लड़का रो रहा था।

८ उस पेड़ की डाली पर बंदर बैठे हैं।

९ नौकर मेरा खाना लाया।

१० सात सिपाही यहाँ आये हैं।

2. Translate into Hindi:

1. I had come.
2. You have gone.
3. The children have cried.
4. The king went there.
5. A soldier came here yesterday.
6. A boy hes fallen.
7. I forgot your name.
8 He had run seven times.
9. The boy played under that tree.
10. I sat on the branch of that tree.

LESSON 34

Conjugation of Transitive Verbs.

Mr. A. W. McMillan writes in his 'Hindustani Hand Book'. "This Conjugation of Transitive Verb is wholly different from anything in the Grammar of European languages and requires close attention by the student."

"This particular lesson may prove a difficult one, but it is of outstanding importance. Patient mastery of verbal irregulrities and the differences between Intransitive and Transitive are essential. Let there be no carelessness here. The student must aim at special accuracy in this class of Verbs and once the habit is formed, no effort of memory is required."

The Conjugation of Transitive Verbs differs from that of Intransitive Verbs only in the Present and Past Perfect Tenses: otherwise it is the same

When a Transitive Verb is in the Perfect Tense the Subject takes ने with it and the 3rd Person Pronoun is changed thus:

मैंने	हमने
तूने	तुमने .
उसने	उन्होंने

पढ़ना "to read"

Indefinite Perfect "read"

	Singular	Plural
1st Person	मैंने पढ़ा	हमने पढ़ा
	I read	We read
2nd ,,	तूने पढ़ा	तूमने पढ़ा
	Thou readest	You read
3rd ,,	उसने पढ़ा	उन्होंने पढ़
	He read	They read

Present Perfect 'have read'

1st Person	मैंने पढ़ा है	हमने पढ़ा है
	I have read	We have read
2nd ,,	तूने पढ़ा है	तुमने पड़ा है
	Thou hast read	You have read
3rd ,,	उसने पढा है	उन्हों न पढ़ा है
	He has read	They have read

Past Perfect 'had read'

1st Person	मैंने पढ़ा था	हमने पढ़ा था
	I had read	We had read
2nd ,,	तूने पढ़ा था	तुमने पढ़ा था
	Thou hast read	You had read
3rd ,,	उसने पढ़ा था	उन्होंने पढ़ा था
	He had read	They had read

Agreement

In Hindi sometimes the Object takes को (ko) and sometimes it does not take को। In the former case the Verb agrees with the Object in Number and Gender and in ihe latter case it takes the form of the Masculine Singular

If the Object is in the Plural, पढ़ा will changed into पढ़े in the Plural Number and पढ़ी in the Feminine Gender.

EXERCISES

1. Translate into English : (oral)

१ मैंने अभी मुंह धोया है।

२ लीला ने दूध खाया है

३ रहीमने अपना पाठ याद कर लिया है

४ कल बड़े ज़ोरसे हवा चली।

५ उन्होंने एक कुंवा खोदा।

६ उसने अपनी लालटेन जलाई।

७ लड़के नदीमें तरे।

८ हमने इन सब पुस्तकों को पढ़ा है।

९ शीलाने मुझको एक चिट्ठी लिखी थी।

१० कल उसने बड़ा अच्छा गाना गाया

2. Answer in Hindi : (oral)

१ क्या विलियम स्कूल आया ?

२ क्या तुमने यह पुस्तक पढ़ी ?

३ यह किसने लिखा है ?
४ आज तुमने क्या खाया है ?
५ तुम ने वहाँ क्या देखा ?
६ वह पेड़ पर क्यों चढ़ा ?
७ कल सबेरे तुम कब उठे ?
८ क्या चोर पकड़ा गया ?
९ कलकत्ते में तुम कहाँ ठहरे ?
१० इस बालक को किसने मारा ?

LESSON 35

FUTURE TENSE

Terminations

Person	Singular	Plural
1st	ऊंगा	एंगे
2nd	एगा	ओगे
3rd	एगा	एंगे

The simple Future is formed by adding the personal Terminations mentioned above to the stem of the Verb:—

Verb	Stem		Tesmination	Future Tense
लिखना	लिख	+	ऊंगा	लिखूंगा

लिखना (to write) **Masculine**

Person	Singular	Plural
1st	मैं लिखूंगा	हम लिखेंगे
	I shall write	We shall write
2nd	तू लिखेगा	तुम लिखोगे
	Thou wilt write	You will write
3rd	वह लिखेगा	वे लिखेंगे
	He will write	They will write

Feminine

1st	मैं लिखूंगी	हम लिखेंगी
	I shall write	We shall write
2nd	तू लिखेगी	तुम लिखोगी
	Thou wilt write	You will write
3rd	वह लिखेगी	वे लिखेंगी
	She will write	They will write

Rule 2 The feminine forms are made by changing गा or गे to गी

आना (to come) **Masculine**

Person	Singular	Plural
1st	मैं आऊंगा	हम आवेंगे
	I shall come	We shall come
2nd	तुम आओगे	तू आवेगा
	Thou wilt come	You will come

Person	Singular	Plural
3rd	वह आवेगा	वह आवेंगे
	He will come	They will come
	Feminine	
1st	मैं आऊंगी	हम आवेंगी
	I shall come	We shall come
2nd	तू आवेगी	तुम आओगी
	Thou wilt come	You will come
3rd	वह आवेगी	वे आवेंगी
	She will come	They will come

Rule 3. When the root ends in a vowel, व or य is inserted before the termination but while writing येगा ए— (e) is generally left out and यगा is written.

Agreement

In the Future Tense the Verb agrees with the Subject in Number and Gender.

मैं घर आऊंगा	I shall go home
लड़की घर जायेगी	The girl will go home

EXERCISES

1. Write out the Future Tense of देखना to see खाना to eat, करना to do and रोना to cry in all Persons and Numbers.

2. Translate into English : (oral)

१ कल मैं आपके घर आऊंगा।

२ हरि मेरे साथ वहाँ जायगा।

३ हम लोग हिन्दी सीखेंगे।

४ सीलीगोड़ी से गाड़ी ना बजे रातमें छूटेगी।

५ मैं आज से रोज चार घंटा पढ़ूंगा।

६ वे नदी में नहाने जायेंगे।

७ वह तुमको नदी के पार ले जायगा।

८ क्या तुम दरवाजा खोलोगे ?

९ उन लड़कियोंकी माँ उनके लिये कपड़े लायगी

१० अगले महीने में मैं चौदह वर्षका हो जाऊंगा

2. Fill up the blanks using Verbs in the future tense : –

वे अपने घर········(जाना to go)

वह लड़की पुस्तक·······(पढना to read)

मै यह काम ····(करना to do)

तुम रोटी ······(खाना to eat)

क्या तू वहाँ ·····(जाना to go)

हम यह खेल·········(खेलना to play)

3. Translate into Hindi :

1. I will go to this house.
2. The poor man will wake up at night.
3. The boys will go to school at 8 A. M
4. Will you read your books ?

5. **We shall stay there for two hours.**
6. **Girls will go to the market.**
7. **It will rain today.**
8. **She will come in the evening.**
9. **The school will remain closed tomorrow.**
10. **On Saturday there will be a foot-ball match.**

LESSON 36

Imperative Mood

Imperative—A Verb which expresses a command is said to be in the Imperative Mood This wood is formed by omtting the terminations (गा-गे-गी-गीं) of the Future Tense except in the 2nd Person Singular when only the stem is used.

Imperative Mood of जाना (to go) **Both Genders.**

Person	Singular	Plural
1st	मैं जाऊं Let me go	हम जावें Let us go.
2nd	तू जा Go.	तुम जाओ Go.
3rd	वह जावे Let him go.	वे जावें Let them go

पढ़ना (to read) **Both Genders.**

1st	मैं पढ़ूं Let me read	हम पढ़ें Let us read
2nd	तू पढ़ Read	तुम पढ़ो Read.
3rd	वह पढ़े Let him read	वे पढ़ें Let them read

Rule 1. If the stem of a Verb ends in a Vowel as in the case of जाना-जा the Verb will be conjugated like जाना.

Rule 2. But if the stem of a Verb ends in a Consonant as in पढ़ना-पढ़ it will be Conjugated like पढ़ना.

EXERCISES

1. Translate into English :

१ जाओ, अपना मुंह धोओ।
२ उस आदमी को यहां बुलाओ।
३ चलो, तैरने चलें।
४ इस लड़के को ठंडा पानी पिलाओ।
५ अपनी पुस्तक यहां लाओ।
६ सोमवार तक यहां रहो।
७ थोड़े से प्याले और लाओ।
८ चलो, हम सब घूमने चलें।
९ कभी झूठ मत बोलो।
१० जाकर दरवाज़ा बंद करो।

2. Translate into Hindi :

1. Let us go for a walk.
2. Give this poor woman one pice,
3. Go to Calcutta tomorrow.
4. Do not bring more cups.

5. Call this girl here.
6. Go and wash your hands.
7. Let us go home now.
8. Do not sit here.
9. Write a letter to your father.
10. Tell the truth'

LESSON 37

Ccontingent Future or Subjunctive Mood

"The Contingent Future 'denotes a future action as conditioned or contingent"- Kellog ? where as the absolute future is used when the future action is regarded as a certainty", —Dann.

This Tense is formed by omitting the termination of the Future Tense, i.e. गा–गे–गी गीं.

देखना (to see) **Both Genders**

Person	Sinular		Plural	
1st	मैं देखूं	(If) I should see	हम देखें	(If) We should see.
2nd	तू देखे	(") Thou shouldst see.	तुम देखो	You should see.
3rd	वह देखे	(") He should see.	वे देखें	They should see.

जाना (to go)

Person	Singular	Plural
1st	मैं जाऊं (If) I should go.	हम जवें (If) We should go.
2nd	तू जाए or जावे (") Thou shouldst go	तुम जाओ (") You should go.
3rd	वह जाए or जावे (") He should go.	वे जावें (") They should go

Contingent and Presumptive Imperfect and Perfect

1	Contingent Imperfect	मैं आता होऊं । I may be coming.
	" Perfect	मैं आया होऊं । I may have come.
2	Presumptive Imperfect	वह आता होगा He must be coming.
	" Perfect	वह आया होगा He must have come.
3	Past Contingnent Imperfect	जो तुम आते होते Had you been coming.
	" Perfect	जो तुम आये न होते If you had not come

1. The Contingent Imperfect and Perfect,

Add Contingent Future of the Verb होना to the Imperfect and Perfect Participle.

मैं आया+होऊं ।

मैं आता+होऊं ।

2. Add the absolute future of होना to the Participles when the idea of presumption or strong probability is expressed.

वह आता + होगा or आया + होगा

3. Add the indefinite Imperfect to the Participles

तुम आते+होते or तुम आये होते ।

"The Past Confiugent Tenses, therefore, signity an action which might possibly have happened but did not happen and in consequence other things continent upon it could not take place." —Dann

CO-RELATIVES

Hindi idiom requires the use of a co-relative to express a condition. The following list of the co-relatives will be usefull for reference.

जब when	तब then
यदि, जो, अगर if	तो then
जो whc, which	सो that
जहाँ where	वहाँ or तहां there
जिधर whither	तिधर thither
जैसा as	वैसा or तैसा so
ज्योंही no sooner, as soon as	त्योंही then

ज्यों ज्यों as, more — त्यों त्यों so; more
यद्यपि although — तथापि even then
जितना howevr much — उतना that much

EXERCISE

1. Translate into English:—

१ यदि मैं उसको यहाँ बुलाता तो वह आता।

२ जो वह मछली पकड़े तो मुझको बताओ।

३ अगर धूप निकली होती तो कपड़े सूख गये होते।

४ ज्यों ही घंटा बजा त्यों ही गाड़ी चल दी।

५ जैसा करोगे (बोओगे) वैसा पाओगे (काटोगे)।

६ क्या मैं उस भिखारी को पैसा दूं ?

७ ज्योंज्यों पानीबरसता था त्योंत्यों लड़कियाँ जाड़ेसे काँपती थीं।

८ जब मैं घर जाऊंगा तो तुम्हें कह दूंगा।

९ यद्यपि वह बड़ा धनीं है तथापि वह बड़ा कंजूस है।

१० क्या वे अब पाठशाला जावें ?

Translate into Hindi:—

1. If the boy should fall, raise him (use जो तो)
2. No sooner had he come, than I called him. (ज्योंही, त्योंही)
3. I went when he came (use जब, तब)
4. Although he is a miser he will give you one pice (यद्यपि. तथापि)

5. What shall we eat ?
6. If the beggar comes, give him one pice. (यदि, तो)
7. The more it rained, the more the boys shivered with cold (ज्यों-ज्यों, त्यों-त्यों)
8. What shall we put on ?
9. Forbid him to come
10. What ! Shall I tell a lie ?

LESSON 38

Continuous or Progressive Tenses

The continuous Tenses are formed by using रहा along with the root of the principal Verb. This Tense is used when the continuance of the action is described.

Present Cootinuous

जाना to go

Masculine

Person	Singular	Plural
First	मैं जा रहा हूँ I am going	हम जा रहे है We are going
Second	तू जा रहा है Thou art going	तुम जा रहे ह You are going

Person	Singular	Plural
Third	वह जा रहा है	वे जा रहे हैं
	He is going	They are going

Past Continuous

First	मैं जा रहा था	हम जा रहे थे
	I was going	We were going
Second	तू जा रहा था	तुम जा रहे थे
	Thou wert going	You were going
Third	वह जा रहा था	वे जा रहे थे
	He was going	They were going

Futu e Continuous

First	मैं जा रहा हूँगा	हम जा रहे होंगे
	I shall be going	We shall be going
Second	तू जा रहा होगा	तुम जा रहे होंगे
	Thou wilt be going	You will be going
Third	वह जा रहा होगा	वे जा रहे होंगे
	He will be going	They will be going

Note 1.—There is an alternate from of the Futur Continuous.

मैं जाता रहूँगा I shall be going हम जाते रहेंगे We shall be going

The Feminin Forms are:

मैं जा रही हूँ I am going
मैं जा रही थी I was going
मैं जा रही हूँगी I shall be going

LESSON 36

1. Translate into English : (oral)

१ उसका भाई भोजन कर रहा था।

२ लड़के मदान में खेल रहे थे।

३ सूरज डूब रहा है।

४ कल से पानी बरस रहा है।

५ लड़कियां पढ़ रही होंगी।

६ मैं दो बरस से इसी घर में रहता हूँ।

७ हम लोग बात चीत कर रहे थे।

८ उस आम के पेड़ पर कौए बोल रहे थे।

९ मछुए मछलियाँ पकड़ रहे होंगे।

१० नौकर दरवाज़ा बंद कर रहा था।

2. Translate into Hindi :

1. Edward is engaged in reading.
2. Four girls were coming along singing.
3. Tomorrow I shall be going to meat my friend.
4. The fisherman were catching the fish.
5. He was buying oranges
6. The boys are carrying loads
7. I am going to a house nearby.
8. I had been studying in this school for the last two years.
9. They will be cooking their food.
10. I am talking to a friend of mine.

LESSON 39

Revision of Tenses

A Short Paradigm of the Hindi Verb.

	Intransitive	Transitive
Influitive or Gerund	गिरना	करना
Imperfect Participle	गिरता	करता
Perfect ”	गिरा	किया
Conjunctive ”	गिर, के. कर	कर, के, कर
Noun of Agency	गिरने वाला	करने वाला

Tenses from the Root (गिर and कर) 3rd. Sing. is given with one exception (Imperative)

Contingent future	वह गिरे	वह करे
Imperative (2nd Person Plural	तुम गिरो	तुम करो
Future	वह गिरेगा	वह करेगा

Tenses from the Imperfect Participle.

Indefinite Imperfect	वह गिरता	वह करता
Present ”	” ” है	” ” है
Past ”	” ” था	” ” था
Contingent ”	” ” हो	” ” हो

	Intransitive	Transitive
Presumptive Imperfect	वह गिरता होगा	वह करता होगा
Past conti. "	" " होता	" " होता

Tenses from the Perfect Participle

Indefinite Perfect	वह गिरा	उसने किया
Present "	" " है	" " है
Past "	" " था	" " था
Contingent "	" " हो	" " हो
Presumptive"	" " होगा	" " होगा
Past Con. "	" " होता	" " होता

Syntax of the Verb.

1. All the verbs agree with the Subject (except those which take ने with them) in Number and Gender e.g.

कुत्ता पूंछ हिलाता है ।

लड़कियाँ चली गईं ।

घोड़े दौड़े ।

घोड़ा दौड़ा ।

बालक पढ़ते हैं ।

लड़का पढ़ता है ।

2. If the Subject is in the Agentive case (i.e. it takes ने) and the Object is without को the Verb

agrees with the Subject in Number and Gender

पिता ने लड़कियों का देखा है ।

माता न लड़कों को देखा है ।

उस स्त्री ने बच्चे को मारा ।

उसने कई घर बनवाये ।

If there is ने with the Subject and को with the Object the Verb takes the form of the Masculine Singular

उसने एक घर बनवाया ।

लड़कियों ने दस आम खाये ।

मैंन रोटा खायो ।

EXERCISES

1. Translate into Hindi :

1. I am Coming.
2. I was comming.
3 I came.
4. I have come.
5. I had come.
7. come here.
8. (If) I should come.
9. (If) I had come.

10. I was about to come.

11. I came and went away.

2. Translate into Hindi :

1. They (Fem.) went.

2. My sisters will go.

3. If he comes tell me at once.

4. On seeing the house she began to cry.

5. They saw three women coming towards them.

3. Translate so as to distinguish the meaning between the following pair of sentences.

मैंने एक घर बनाया and मैंने एक घर बनवाया है।

चोर पकड़ा गया है ,, उसने चोर को पकड़ लिया है।

धोबी का गदहा छोटा है ,, धोबी का एक छोटा गदहा है।



CHAPTER VII.

VERB.

LESSON 40

CAUSAL VERB

Dr. Kellogg says "The First Causal expresses **immediate causation** and the Second Causal **mediate causation** of the act or state of the primitive." The First Causal is used when there is Causing of something to be done by another and the Second Causal is used when the action is performed by the agency of another (Third Person)

Formation of Causal Verbs

General Rules

1. **First Causals** are formed by adding आ before the ना of the Infinitive.

2. **Second Causals** are formed by adding वा before the In finitive.

Verb	First Causal	Second causal
गिरना to fall	गिराना to fell, to knock down	गिरवाना to cause one knock another down
उठना to rise	उठाना to raise	उठवाना to cause, to raise
चढ़ना to climb	चढ़ाना to lift up	चढ़वाना
छिपना to be hidden	छिपाना to hide	छिपवाना
पढ़ना to read	पढ़ाना to teach	पढ़वाना
लिखना to write	लिखाना to dictate	लिखवाना
पहिनना to wear	पहिनना to cause to wear	पहिनवाना
पकना to be cooked, to ripe	पकाना to cook	पकवाना
बढ़ना to increase to grow	बढ़ाना to cause to increase	बढ़वाना
कटना to be cut	काटना to cut, bite	कटवाना

2. Certain First Causals are formed by lengthening the vowel of the root of the Verb, while the Second Cousals are formed by reverting again to the short vowel with a व added thus:

Verb	First Causal	Sec. Causal
खुलना to be opened	खोलना to open	खुलवाना
पिटना to be beaten	पीटना to thrash	पिटवाना
बंधना to be tied	बांधना to tie, to fasten	बंधवाना
खिचना to be drawn	खींचना to pull	खिचवाना
निकलना to come out	निकालना to turn out to extract	निकलवाना
बंटना to be distributed	बाँटना to distribute	बटवाना
खुदना to be dug	खोदना to dig	खुदवाना
घुलना to be dissolved (for salt, sugar)	घोलना to dissolve	घुलवाना

3. If the root consists of two letters and the first letter is a long vowel, it becomes short in the First Causal being followed by a long vowel In the Second Causal व is added :

Verb	First Causal	Sec. Causal
जागना to awake	जगाना to arouse	जगवाना
घूमना to go round	घुमाना to turn round	घुमवाना
भागना to flee	भगाना to cause, to flee	भगवाना
बीतना to be passed	बिताना to pass	बितवाना
जोतना to yoke	जुताना to cause, to yoke	जुतवाना
डूबना to sink	डूबाना to submerge	डुबवाना

4. If the root has only one letter with a long vowel, it is made short and ला is inserted before the infinitive ना of the verb in the First Causal and लवा in the Second Causal.

Verb	First Causal	Sec Causal
रोना to cry	रुलाना to make cry	रुलवाना
सोना to sleep	सुलाना to cause to sleep	सुलवाना
देना to give	दिलाना to cause to give	दिलवाना
पीना to drink	पिलाना to give drink	पिलवाना
सीना to sew	सिलाना to cause to sew	सिलवाना

5 **Certain Causal Verbs which are irregular.**

Verb	First Causal	Sec. Causal
टूटना to break (intrans)	तोड़ना to break (trans)	तुड़वाना
छूटना to be freed	छोड़ना to free	छुड़वाना to liberate
फूटना to burst	फोड़ना to burst	फुड़वाना
फटना to be torn	फाड़ना to tear	फड़वाना
बिकना to be sold	बेचना to sell	बिकवाना
रहना to live	रखना to keep	रखवाना
खाना to eat	खिलाना to feed	खिलवाना

EXERCISE

1. Translate into English:—

१ शिक्षक लड़कों को भूगोल पढ़ा रहा था।

२ मैं आपको यह कह दूंगा पर पिता जी को यह बात नहीं बतलाऊंगा।

३ लूसी ने आप दूध नहीं पिया पर बिल्ली को दूध पिला दिया।

४ उसने स्वयं साँप को नहीं मारा पर नौकर से मरवा दिया।

५ उस घाड़ ने पहले मेरे भाई को गिराया फिर मैं भी गिर पड़ा।

६ आप अपना कोट दर्जी से सिलवा लीजिए।

७ धाई ने बच्चे को सुला दिया।

८ हजाम से अपने बाल कटवा लो।

९ यदि तुम सवेरे जग जाओ तो मुझे भी जगा दो।

१० मैं लड़कों से आज एक चिट्ठी लिखवाऊंगा।

2. Translate into Hindi :

1. I shall have this letter writ ten by some—body
2. The mother will put the child to sleep.
3. I shall build a house for myself,
4. You have caused the child to cry.
5. The teacher was teaching Hind i
6. Raise him up by the arm
7. I had a coat sewn.
8. The door is open but who opened it ?
9. I shall get that gardener to cut down that tree.
10. Please have my furniture sold.

LESSON 41

Passive Voice

There are two Voices, Active and Passive. Hindi sentences are generally written in the Active Voice but sometimes the Passive is also used.

The Verb

1. The Passive Voice is formed by adding the Moods and Tenses of the Verb जाना to the Perfect Participle.

देखना	to see	देखा जाना	to be seen
करना	to do	किया जाना	to be done

The Subject and the Object

2. When a sentence in the Active Voice is changed into the Passive Voice the original Subject is put in the Instrumental Case (से) and the Object in the Nominative Case.

Agreement .

The Verb agrees with the Object in Number and Gender.

Active	Passive
मैंने राम को देखा	राम मुझसे देखा गया
I saw Ram	Ram was seen by me

Active	Passive
वह यह काम करता है	काम उससे किया जाता है
He does this work	This work is done by him.

Note—The Passive construction is not very common in Hindi. It is used when the doer of the action is not known or is for any reason not mentioned.

EXERCISE

1. Change into the Passive Voice :

१ राम ने कुत्ते को मारा।
२ तुमने रोटी खायी ।
३ यह चिट्ठी कौन पढ़ेगा ?
४ मैं पुस्तक पढ़ता हूँ।
५ सिपाही ने चोर को देखा।
६ यह नाली किसने बनाई थी ?
७ वह कुत्ते को बुलायगा।
८ मैं उसको प्यार करता हूँ ।
९ हम काम करेंगे ।
१0 बिल्ली ने चूहे को मारा है।

2 Change into the Active Voice :

१ यह घर राज से बनाया गया है।
२ मेरी बहिन तुमसे देखी गई।

३ यह नारंगी मुझसे खायी जायगी।

४ राम से रावण मारा गया।

५ वह चिट्ठी मुझसे लिखी गई थी।

LESSON 42

COMPOUND VERB

We do not find the Kind of Verb known as the Compound Verb in English but Hindi sentences are full of Compound Verbs 'perhaps the nearest parallel in English to this kind of Compound is in such colloquial phrases as, "I ll give a look at it, I'll take a walk, I'll have a swim"

– Greaves

Compound Verb—When two verbs are joined to give one verbal idea it is called a Compound Verb. We can divide this class of Verbs into three groups They are :

1. Compound Verbs formed with the Stem

2. " " **Infinitive**

3. " " **Participles**

GROUP I

Compound Verbs formed with the Stem.

We can include four kinds of Compound Verbs in this group The Additional Verbs are added

to the stem of the first Verbs in duly conjugated forms :

1. **Intensive Verbs** (those intensify the meaning of the Verbs).

Verb	Stem		Intensive	Compound Verb	
गिरना to fall	गिर	+	पड़ना,	गिर पड़ना	to fall down
			जाना,	जाना	"
बोलना to speak	बोल	+	उठना,	बोल उठना	to speak out
			पड़ना	,, पड़ना	,,
उठना to get	उठ	+	बैठना	उठ बैठना	to get up
खाना to eat	खा	+	लेना	खा लेना	to eat up
मारना to strike	मार	+	डालना	मार डालना	to kill
चलना to go	चल	+	पड़ना	चल पड़ना	to set out
			देना	" देना	
रोना to cry	रो	+	पड़ना	रो पड़ना	to burst out
उड़ना to fly	उड़	+	जाना	उड़ जाना	to fly away
काटना to cut	काट	+	डालना	काट डालना	to cut down
फेंकना to throw	फेंक	+	देना	फेंक देना	to throw away
सोना to sleep	सो	+	जाना	सो जाना	to go to sleep

2. **Potential Verbs** signify ability for an action and are formed by adding "सकना" can (intrans) to the Stem.

करना to do	कर सकना to be able to do			
पढ़ना to read	पढ़ सकना	"	"	read.
देखना to see	देख सकना	"	"	see
लिखना to write	लिख सकना	"	"	write

3. **Completive Verb** signify completion of an action and are formed by adding चुकना (intrans) (to finish) to the Stem :

लिखना to write	लिख चुकना to finish writing			
करन to do	कर	"	"	doing
कहना to say	कह	"	"	saying

4. **Continuative Verbs** give the idea of continuance of an action and are formed by adding रहना (intrans.) to the Stem :

करना to do	कर रहा है is in the act of doing.
जाना to go	जा रहे थे were actually going

EXERCISES

1. Translate into English (oral):—

१ क्या तुम हिन्दी में बातचीत कर सकते हो ?

२ बिल्ली ने चूहे को मार डाला।

३ बेचारा बूढ़ा पेड़ पर से गिर पड़ा।

४ उस लड़के ने मेरी पुस्तक उठाकर फैंक दी।

५ माली ने सब बड़े बड़े पेड़ काट डाले।

६ जब मैं वहाँ पहुंचा तब सब भोजन कर चुके थे।

७ जब तुम लिख चुको तो मुझे बताना।

८ क्या तुम यहाँ से सड़क देख सकते हो ?

९ उस समय मैं भोजन कर रहा था।

१० दर्जी हमारे कपड़े सी रहा है।

2. Translate into Hindi :

1. I fell down from the tree.
2 My mother is able to write Hindi.
3. Boys were climbing the tree.
4. You can send it by the post.
5. The children were writing with their pens.
6. Yes, I can speak Hindi.
7. They have finished reading.
8. The tailor has finished cutting the cloth.
9. Cn seeing the thief the girl cried aloud.
10. My brother has arrived in Kalimpong.

LESSON 43

COMPOUND VERB

Group II (formed with Infinitives)

All the Compound Verbs included in this group are formed in **Inflected** Infinitives The additional Verbs can be duly conjugated in each case.

1 **Inceptive Verbs** indicate the commencement of the action. They are formed by adding लगना intrans (to begin) :

मैं पढ़ने लगा   I began to read.

वह बोलने लगी   She began to speak.

लड़के कांपने लगे The boys began to tremple.

2. **Permissive Verbs** Indicate giving permission. They are formed by adding देना trans. (to give)

मुझे घर जाने दीजिये   Please let me go home.

उनको गाना गाने दो   Let them sing

उसने मुझे अपनी चिट्ठी पढ़ने दी He allowed me to read his letter.

3. **Acquisitives** signify receiving permission. They are formed by adding पाना (to get) :

वह करने पाया He was allowed to do.

वह जाने पाया He was allowed to go.

4. **Compelling Verbs:** show compulsion or obligation. They are formed by adding पड़ना or होना The Dative Case is used with the Subject.

तुमको यह करना पड़ेगा You shall have to do this.

" होगा "

उसको वहाँ से भागना पड़ा He was compelled to run away from there.

EXERCISES

1. Translate into English:—

१ वहाँ कोई नहीं जाने पाता है।

२ जाड़े के मारे लड़के काँपने लगे।

३ क्या आप मुझे एक हफ्ते की छुट्टी देंगे ?

४ मिठाई देखते ही सब लड़के मिठाई मांगने लगे।

५ मैं कहता हूँ तुम्हें अपना पाठ याद करना होगा।

६ मुझे राजा साहब से मिलने दीजिए।

७ अध्यापक ने मुझे घर जाने नहीं दिया।

८ क्या वह जाने पाया ?

९ पिता जी को मेरे लिये एक नई गाड़ी खरीदनी पड़ेगी।

१० ज्योंही मैं बोलने लगा त्योंही उसने मुझे रोक दिया।

2. Translate into Hindi:
   1 Please let the man sit.
   2 He asked leave to go home but did not get it.
   3 I had to go out.
   4 To-morrow the boys will begin to read.
   5 Seeing me the thief began to run
   6 He was not allowed to enter that house.
   7 Please let him off.
   8 Look here, you will have to learn this by to-morrow.
   9 Let that girl sit down.
   10 On hearing the story, boys began to laugh.

LESSON 44.

COMPOUND VERB

Group III (Verbs formed with Participles)

There are two kinds of Verbs included in this group. They are Frequentatives and desiratives and are formed with the Perfect and Imperfect Participles.

1. **Frequentatives:** Tell us about habitual or repeated actions that happen frequently or regularly.

   Add करना (tran.) to the Perfect Participle.

Note the difference :

मैं जाता हूँ I go, I am going.

मैं जाता रहता हूँ I often go.

मैं दूध पीता हूँ I drink milk.

मैं रोज़ दूध पिया करता हूँ।

I am in the habit of drinking milk every day.

वह करती है She does. She is doing.

वह किया करती है She habitually does (it).

लड़के स्कूल को जा रहे हैं। The boys are going to school.

लड़के स्कूल को जाया करते हैं The boys go to school every day.

Note—जाया is used instead of गया (Perfect Part.) in the Frequentative.

2. **Desiratives:** show a certain action which is about to take place,

Add चाहना (tran.) to wish to the Perfect Participle.

वह खाया चाहता है He is about to eat.

वह बोला चाहता था He was about to speak.

3. **Desiratives** also express the desire to do a certain action.

Add चाहना to the **uninflected** Infinitives.

क्या तुम जाना चाहते हो Do you want to go?

मैं आपसे मिलना चाहता था — I wanted to see (meet) you.

(Students are advised not to speak or write thus. हम जाने (जाना) मांगते हैं for 'I want to go.' They should say मैं जाना चाहता हूँ or हम जाना चाहते हैं।)

4. **Continuatives:** indicate continuance of action and are formed by adding रहना to the imperfect Participle

लड़के खेलते रहते हैं Boys keep on playing.

5. **Progressive:** express the idea of advance and progression and are formed by adding जाना to the Imperfect Participle.

लड़के खेलते जाते हैं — Boys go on playing.

6. **Staticals:** indicate motion during the act or state of doing which is described. They are formed by adding हुए to the inflected Imperfect Participle.

लड़के खेलते हुए जाते हैं Boys are going playing along.

Note the difference :

Continuative वह पढ़ता रहता है He keeps on reading.

Progressive वह पढ़ता जाता है He goes on reading

Staticals वह पढ़ते हुए जाता है He is going reading along.

CONTINUATIVE वह देखती रहती है।
She keeps on looking.
PROGRESSIVE वह देखती जाती है।
She goes on looking.
STATICAL लड़की देखती हुई जाती है।
She is going looking along.
CONTINUATIVE लड़के लिखते रहते हैं।
Boys keep on writing.
PROGRESSIVE लड़के लिखते जाते हैं।
Boys go on writing.
STATICAL लड़के बात करते हुए जाते हैं।
Boys are going talking along.

EXERCISES

1. Transate into English.

१ हर रविवार को सब लोग गिरजों में जाया करते हैं।
२ सब लड़के फुटबाल खेला करते हैं।
३ उसका भाई बोला चाहता है।
४ क्या तुम अपने घर जाना चाहते हो ?
५ पानी बरसा चाहता है।
६ वह उठना चाहती थी।
७ आजकल चीनी का भाव बढ़ता जाता है।
८ उस घर में सारी रात लालटेन जलती रहती है।
९ वे सब बात करते हुए जाते थे।
१० वे दौड़ते जाते हैं।

2. Translate into Hindi.

1. Everyday boys and girls go to school.

2. On Snnday I read this book for two hours.
3. His father is about to die.
4. Do you wants to go to church ?
5. She want to read this book.
6. His marriage is about to take place.
7. Two girls were coming along singing.
8. They go on reading.

REVISION OF COMPOUND VERBS

Verbs	Form in which the Associated Verb is used	Name given t0 the Compound Verbs
सकना intrans	With the stem	Potentials
चुकना "	"	Completives
लगना "	Inflected Infinitive	Inceptives
देना trans	"	Permissives
पाना "	"	Acquisitives
करना "	Perfect Participle	Frequentatives
रहना intrans.	Imperfect or Perfect Participle	Continuatives
जाना "	"	" or Progrssives
चाहना trans	Uninflicted Infinitive	Desirative

EXERCISE

1. Translate into Hindi.

   1 I am reading this book.
   2 I want to read this book.
   3 I have begun to read this book.
   4 I was not allowed to read this book.
   5 Allow me to read this book.
   6 I was about to read this book.
   7 I read this book everyday.
   8 I must read this book.
   9 I can read this book.
   10 I have finished reading this book.

LESSON 45

The Verbs to have, to be.

The Verb to have is generally translated wrong into Hindi because the Hindi idiom differs in meaning and construction To illustrate the various uses of the verb 'to have' we give the following examples.

1. When to have, means to possess, it is पास है in Hindi. It is used with the Genitive Case.

I have मेरे पास है।

You have तुम्हारे (आपके) पास है।

He, she, it has उसके पास है ।
Ram has राम के पास है ।
They have इनके पास है ।
We have हमारे पास है ।
The boys have लड़कों के पास है ।
George has an umbrella. जार्ज के पास एक छाता है
We have a car हमारे पास एक मोटर है ।

2. Sometimes 'to have' means to be, है, होता है or था होता था, and Locative or Genitive Case is used.

Trees have branches पेड़ में डालियाँ हैं ।
April has thirty days अप्रेल में तीस दिन होते हैं।
A fish has fins मछली के पर हैं ।
He has four sons उसके चार बेटे हैं ।
We had many servants हमारे कई नौकर थे ।
We had a beautiful garden हमारे पास एक सुंदर बग़ीचा था ।
A week has seven days हफ्तेमें सात दिन होते हैं ।

3. In the Future Tense to have is पाना

I shall have a knife. मैं एक चाकू पाऊँगा ।
You will have your book तुम अपनी पुस्तक पाओगे ।
He will have his pen वह अपनी कलम पावेगा ।
They will have leave वे छुट्टी पावेंगे ।

THE VERB होना to be

The Verb होना to be is an Auxiliary and is used with the Perfect and Imperfect Participles to form the Perfect and Imperfect Tenses, but the Verb होता (Imp. Participle of होना) is used along with other parts of the Verb TO BE ((है, था etc.) as a predicate of things which are general and u ual, a natural and unalterable fact. and when happenings occur repeatedly. e g.

आम मीठे होते हैं	Mangoes are sweet.
हफ्ते में सात दिन होते हैं	There are seven days in a week.
चिड़ियों के पर होते हैं	Birds have feathers.

EXERCISES

1. Translate into English .

१ उसके पास एक रुपया है ।

२ एडवर्ड के दो लड़के और दो लड़कियां थीं ।

३ हर कमरे में चार खिड़कियाँ थीं ।

४ तुम लोग अपना इनाम पाओगे ।

५ उसके पास एक पालतू बन्दर था ।

६ मेरे पास एक तोता है ।

७ उस घर में पाँच कमरे हैं ।

८ उसके तीन बड़े-बड़े मकान हैं ।

९ उसके पास बहुत सा रुपया है ।

१० राम और श्याम के पास बहुत से कबूतर हैं ।

११ पेड़ में पत्ते होते हैं । १२ गाय के दो सींग होते हैं ।

2. Translate into Hindi :

1 I have a cow.
2 The ox has two horns.
3 The room has one door only.
4 That old man has five sons.
5 They have a car.
6 Marry has a good friend.
7 Sohan has three servants.
8 You will have your dog.
9 The tree has leaves.
10 He will have a gun.
11 A horse has no horns.
12 There are thirty days in a month.

LESSON 46.

Some Idiomatic Uses of Verbs

उठना, उठाना

उठो, अपना मुँह धोओ	Go and wash your face.
मैं सुबह ५ बजे उठता हूँ	I rise early at 5 a. m.
एक बड़ी आँधी उठी	A heavy storm arose.
दूकान उठ गई है	The business has been closed.
यह कानूक उठ गया है	This law has been abolished.
अपना हाथ उठाओ	Raise your hand.

यह बोझा मेरे सिर पर उठा दीजिये।

Please lift this burden to my head.

एक भेड़िया बच्चे को उठा ले गया।

A wolf carried away the child.

बाजार सवेरे उठ जाता है The market is closed earlier.

काटना

मेरी अँगुली कट गई है — I have cut my finger.

एक पागल कुत्ते ने उस काटा — A mad dog bit him.

किसान धान काट रहे हैं — The farmers are cutting paddy.

नाई बाल काट रहा है — The barber is cropping hair.

चूहों ने कोट को काट डाला है — Rats have made holes in the coat.

उसके वेतन से ५) रू० काट लिए जायेंगे।

Five rupees will be deducted from his salary.

एक आदमी रेलगाड़ी से कट गया है।

A man is run over by the train.

स्कूल से उसका नाम कट गया है।

His name has been struck off the school rolls.

मिलना

हमको रास्ते में उसका भाई मिला

We met his brother on the way.

वह अपने मित्र से मिलने गया है।
He has gone to see his friend.
मुझे सड़क पर एक पांच रुपये का नोट मिला।
I found a five rupee note on the road.
उसको घर जाने की आज्ञा नहीं मिली।
He did not get permission to go home.
सब लड़के लड़कियां मिलकर खेल रहे हैं।
All the boys and girls are playing together.
हमको प्रति दिन आध सेर दूध मिलता है।
We get half a seer milk every day.

चलना–चलाना

आओ, हम जल्दी से चलें। Come, Let us go quickly.
वह यहां से चला गया। He left this place.
मेरी घड़ी ठीक नहीं चल रही है।
My watch is not going right.
वह गाड़ी अच्छी तरह नहीं चला सकता।
He cannot drive a coach well.
सिपाहियों ने बन्दूक चलाई। The soldiers fired a gun.
मैं अपना खर्च नहीं चला सकता।
I cannot meet my expenses.
तुम्हारी दूकान कैसी चल रही है? How is your shop going?

छोड़ना

मेरा हाथ छोड़ दो Let go my hand.
मजिस्ट्रेट ने कैदी को छोड़ दिया
The magistrate released the prisoner.

गाड़ी कब छूटेगी ? When will the train start ?
उसने पढ़ना छोड़ दिया He gave up his studies.
क्या तुम नोकरी छोड़ दोगे Will you resign your post ?
कौन बन्दूक छोड़ता है Who is firing the gun ?

पकड़ना

उसने मेरा हाथ पकड़ा He caught hold of my hand.
चोर पकड़ा गया है The thief has been caught.
सिपाही चोर को पकड़ने आये हैं।
The police have come to arrest the thief.

लगना

इस काम को करने में दो दिन लगेंगे।
It will take two days to do it,
मकान में आग लग गई। The house caught fire,
उसको बुरी तरह चोट लगी है। He is badly hurt.
मुझे प्यास लगी है। I feel thirsty.
मुझे ठंड लगी है। I have caught cold.
इस मकान में तुम्हारे कितने रूपये लगे ?
How much has this house cost you ?
दवा कड़वी लगती है। The medicine tastes bitter
वे काम में लगे हैं। They are engaged in work.
उसने अपने घाव में दवा लगाई।
He applied lotion to his wound.

आना

वह क्रोध में आया। He became angry.

मुझको याद नहीं आता। I do not remember.

मुझे उस पर बड़ी दया आई। I took pity on him.

उस लड़के को पढ़ना नहीं आता।
This boy does not know how to read.

घोड़ा बोझा ढोने के काम आता है
The horse is used to carry loads.

EXERCISES

4. Translate into English :

१ चोर अभी तक नहीं पकड़े जा सके।
२ उस दिन रात को बड़ी आँधी उठी और पानी बरसा
३ रविवार की हाट चार बजे उठ जाती है।
४ आप मेरे वेतन से ये रुपये काट सकते हैं।
५ इस मोटर को खरीदने में कितने रुपये लगे।
६ यह चाकू बड़ा तेज है।
७ इतनी दूर पैदल जाने में छः दिन लगेंगे।
८ वह अपने पिता से मिलने कल गया था।
९ मुझे रास्ते में रुपयों से भरी एक थैली मिली।

2. Translate into Hindi :

1 I feel hungry.
2 This book has cost me five rupees.

3. He cut his finger with a knife.
4. The barber is cropping hair.
5. The soldiers fired the gun.
6. He gave up his ssudies.
7. He resigned his post.
8. I have not received any letter from my father.
9. He met a man on the road.
10. He was very angry when he heard this.



Chapter IX

INDECLINABLES

LESSON 47

Indeclinables (अव्यय)

In Hindi there are a number of such words which are called Indeclinables (अव्यय) because they are not subject to inflexional changes. They are the Adverb, the Post-position, Conjunction (or Disjunction) and the Interjection

ervAbd क्रिया विशेषण

An Adverb is a word that tells us something about the Verb. Such words are not subject to inflection having no Number or Gender. They can be divided into seven groups according to their mernings. They are:

(1) Adverbs of Time
(2) „ Place
(3) „ Manner
(4) „ Cause
(5) „ Quantity
(6) Interogative Adverbs
(7) Affirming and Denying

Distinguish the adverb in each sentence.

1. **Time** राम ! तुम कलकत्ता कब जाओगे ?
Ram, when will you go to Calcutta ?
कल जाऊँगा । To morrow.

2 **Place**

क्या वह यहाँ आया था ? Did he come here ?

नहीं, वह यहाँ नहीं आया वहीं रह गया ।

No, he did not come here but he stayed there

NOTE—उधर (thither) and इधर (hither) are different from वहाँ (there) and यहाँ (here), The former mean direction and the latter mean place,

3. **Manner**

वह दौड़कर चला He went running.

वह चिल्लाकर बोला He cried aloud.

उसको जैसा कहा गया वैसा ही उसने किया

He did as he was told.

4. **Cause**

मैं स्टेशन पर देर से पहुँचा इसलियेगाड़ी नहीं पकड़ सका ।
As I arrived at the station late, I could not catch the train.

5. **Quantity**

यह बहुत नहीं है, बहुत थोड़ा है ।
It is not much but very little.

तुम्हें कुछ अवश्य करना चाहिये।
You must do something.

(6) **Interrogative**

क्या तुम जाओगे? Will you go?
तुमने यह क्यों किया Why did you do this?

(7) **affirming and Denying :**

QUESTION	ANSWER
क्या वह आया?	हां, वह आया।
Did he come?	Yes, he came.
	नहीं, वह नहीं आया।
	No, he did not come.

यह काम मत करो Don't do this.

COMMON ADVERBS

1. **ADVERBS OF PLACE :-**

यहाँ, यहीं here, वहाँ; वहीं there, जहाँ, जहीं where. तहाँ,तहीं there, कहाँ, कहीं where, सर्वत्र everywhere सब जगह everywhere, पार on the other side. के पास, निकट, समीप near, दूर far, भीतर inside. बाहर outside.

Adverbs of Directions :--
इधर hither, उधर thither, जिधर whither, तिधर thither. किधर whither, दाहिने to the right बायें to the left.

2. ADVERBS OF TIME :—

अब now, तब then, जब when, कब when, कभी any time.

आज today, कल to-morrow, yesterday, परसों yesterday or the day before yesterday, आगे before, पहिले before, previously.

सबेरे, तड़के early, प्रतिदिन everyday, कभी कभी occasionally, बार बार again and again.

एकबार once, फिर again, once more, इतने में meanwhile निदान, अन्त में finally.

3 ADVERBS OF MANNER :—

यों, ऐसे in this manner, वैसे in that manner, ज्यों as

त्यों like that, क्यों how, why, अचानक, एकाएक suddenly.

जल्द, जल्दी, तुरन्त, झट, झटपट quickly.

अकस्मात् suddenly, प्रायः usually, अर्थात् namely, that is to say, सा like,

भर whole, धीरे slowly, धीरे धीरे slowly, सच truely.

सचमुच truely, झूठ falsely, ठीक, ठीक–ठीक, exactly

4. ADVERBS OF QUANTITY :—

बहुत much, बड़ा, अति very.

अधिक more, कम less, तनिक a little.

कुछ some, केवल only, विरले very few: seldom.

एकबार once, दोबार twice. इतना as much.

उतना that much; कितना how much,

5. ADVERBS OF CAUSE :—

इसलिये therefore. इसकारण for this reason, अतएव therefore, क्योंकि because.

6. INTERROGATIVE ADVERBS : –

क्यों why, क्या what.

7. AFFIRMING & DENYING :—

हाँ yes, न, नहीं no.

मत no, अच्छा yes, very well.

जरूर, अवश्य certainely.

क्यों नहीं yes (why not), शायद perhaps.

कदापि per chance, possibly.

EXERCISES

1. Tanslate into English:—

१ जब तुम आये तब वह जला गया।

२ मैं ने इसे एक बार पढ़ा, दो बार पढ़ा पर याद न आा ।

३ मुझे केवल पाँच रुपये दे दीजिए।

४ लड़के दिन भर धूप में खेल रहे थे।

५ मेरी मां बीमार थी इसलिए कल मैं स्कूल न आ सका।

६ ज्यों ही मैं स्कूल में पहुँचा घंटी बजी।

७ कितने ही आदमी धीरे धीरे भोजन करते हैं।

८ वह बड़ी तेजी से दौड़ सकता है।

९ मैं वहाँ जल्द आऊंगा।

१० वह शायद यहाँ आवे।

Translate into Hindi :

1 He will return soon

2 Ram goes to school every day.

3 Horses run quickly.

4 They go out for a walk every morning.

5 You should not do this.

6 If you come to me I will give you a book.

7 The boy went back whence he came.

8 He was very pleased with me.

9 Owing to my father's illness I shall not be able to come to school today.

10 I saw him twice.



LESSON 48.

Simple Postpositions I (सम्बन्ध बोधक)

Uses of ने (ne) and को (ko)

AGENTIVE CASE : If the Postposition ने is used with the Subject, it is called the Agentive Case

RULE 1. ने is used with the Subject if the Verb is **Transitive and of Perfect Participles :**

लड़के ने एक घर देखा — The boy saw a house.

मैं ने एक आम खाया — I ate a mango.

RULE 2 If ने is used with the Subject and the Object is without Postposition को, the Verb agrees with the Object in Number & Gender.

मेरी बहिन ने दो आम खाये My sister ate two mangoes.

लड़के ने एक पुस्तक पढ़ी — The boy read a book.

लड़की ने घर देखे — The girl saw the houses.

RULE 2. If the Postposition को is used with the Object, the Verb always takes the form of the Masculine Singular,

मैंने राम को देखा — I saw Ram.

लड़कों ने लड़कियों को देखा — The boys saw the girls.

उसने अपनी बहिनों को देखा He saw his sisters.

Excemption—The following Verbs, though Transitive. are exceptions to the above rule, and the Agentive ने is not used with them.

लाना to bring, भूलना to forget, बकना to chatter idly, बोलना to speak and लड़ना to fight (if the Object is mentioned).

Uses of को (ko)

RULE 1. It (को) is generally used with proper names :

राम को बुलाओ Call Ram.

RULE 2. It is used with Pronouns :

मैंने उसको देखा I saw him.

RULE 3. It is used when the Object is a definite one.

इस कलम को फेंक दो Throw away this pen.

But कोई कलम ले आओ Bring any pen.

RULE 4. Sometimes when the definite article is is used in English :

लड़कों ने सांप को मारा The boys killed the snake.

But लड़कों ने एक साँप मारा The boys killed a snake

RULE 5. If there are two Objects in a sentence it is used with the indirect object.

LESSON 48.

Simple Postpositions I (सम्बन्ध बोधक)

Uses of ने (ne) and को (ko)

AGENTIVE CASE : If the Postposition ने is used with the Subject, it is called the Agentive Case

RULE 1. ने is used with the Subject if the Verb is **Transitive and of Perfect Participles :**

लड़के ने एक घर देखा — The boy saw a house.

मैं ने एक आम खाया — I ate a mango.

RULE 2 If ने is used with the Subject and the Object is without Postposition को, the Verb agrees with the Object in Number & Gender.

मेरी बहिन ने दो आम खाये My sister ate two mangoes.

लड़के ने एक पुस्तक पढ़ी — The boy read a book.

लड़की ने घर देखे — The girl saw the houses.

RULE 2. If the Postposition को is used with the Object, the Verb always takes the form of the Masculine Singular,

मैंने राम को देखा — I saw Ram,

लड़कों ने लड़कियों को देखा — The boys saw the girls.

उसने अपनी बहिनों को देखा He saw his sisters,

Excemption—The following Verbs, though Transitive. are exceptions to the above rule, and the Agentive ने is not used with them.

लाना to bring, भूलना to forget, बकना to chatter idly, बोलना to speak and लड़ना to fight (if the Object is mentioned).

Uses of को (ko)

RULE 1. It (को) is generally used with proper names :

राम को बुलाओ Call Ram.

RULE 2. It is used with Pronouns :

मैंने उसको देखा I saw him.

RULE 3. It is used when the Object is a definite one.

इस कलम को फेंक दो Throw away this pen.

But कोई कलम ले आओ Bring any pen.

RULE 4. Sometimes when the definite article is is used in English :

लड़कों ने सांप को मारा The boys killed the snake.

But लड़कों ने एक सांप मारा The boys killed a snake

RULE 5. If there are two Objects in a sentence it is used with the indirect object.

उसने मेरे पिता को एक घोड़ा दिया ।

He gave my father a horse.

मैंने भिखारी को एक आना दिया ।

I gave one anna to the beggar.

EXERCISES

1. Translate into Hinbi

1 The boy ate bread.
2 The boys ate bread.
3 He wrote a letter.
4 He wrote letters.
5 He saw a house.
6 She saw the houses.
7 The girl ate rice.
8 I said this thing.
9 She called three boys.

2. Translate into Hindi :

1 The cows ate the grass.
2 The girls have eaten sixteen mangoes.
3 The boys had eaten two fishes.
4 She had opened her eyes.
5 I bought seven pearls.
6 We caught many fishes.
7 The girl sewed the sheet.
8 The man has dug the ground.
9 They ploughed the field.
10 The mother has struck her son.

LESSON 49

Simple Postposition II.

1. से is used with tee Instrumental and Ablative Cases tó denote :

1. SEPERATION :

भाई भाई से अलग हो जायगा।

Brother will be seperated **from brother.**

2, SOURCE, ORIGIN OR CAUSE :

वह पढ़ने की इच्छा से आया।

He came in the (**from the**) hope of learning.

3. MEANS OR INSTRUMENT :

छुरी से काटो Cut (it) **with a knife.**

4. AGENT with PASSIVE VERBS :

मुझ से किताब पढ़ी गई ।

The book was read by me.

5. MANNER & PROHIBITION :

यह किस प्रकार से हो सकता है।

How can that be ?

धीरे से बोलो ।

Speak **slowly.**

6. COMPARISON :

तुम्हारी पुस्तक मेरी पुस्तक से छोटी है।

Your book is smaller than mine.

7. THE PERSON SPOKEN TO :

मोहन से कहो। Say to Mohan.

2. का, के, की of are used with Genitive Case and are used to denote:—

1. POSSESSION :

यह उसका घोड़ा है। This is his horse.

2 RELATIONSHIP :

वह उसकी माता थी। She was his mother.

3. MATERIAL :

मेरी स्लेट पत्थर की है।

My slate is made of stone.

4. PRICE :

यह पुस्तक चार आने की है।

This book costs four annas.

5. AGE :

यह लड़की पन्द्रह बरस की है।

This girl is fifteen years old.

6. USE :

यह पढ़ने की पुस्तक है।

This book is for reading.

7. The things sworn by :

ईश्वर की कसम "By God"

3. में, पर, तक are used with the Locative Case.

में corresponds to, in, among, at, between, and of:

घर में। in the house.

मनुष्यों में। among men.

चरणों में। at the feet.

इन दोनों में क्या अन्तर है।

What is the difference between these two.

वह सब लड़कों में बड़ा लड़का है।

That boy is the biggest of all.

पर corresponds to on or at :

घोड़े पर चढ़ो। Mount on a horse.

दरवाजे पर मत खड़े होओ।

Do not stand at the door.

तक corresponds to upto :

पेट तक पानी आ गया।

The water came up to the stomach.

4. में से throgh (across) of :

वह जंगल में से होकर आया।

He came through (across) the forest.

हम में से वहाँ एक जायगा।

One of us will go there.

5. पर से FROM:

वह घोड़े पर से गिर पड़ा।
He fell down from the horse.

EXERCISES

1. Translate into English .–

१ शहर को देखकर वे बनारस से चले आये ।
२ मेरा हाथ उसके हाथ से बड़ा है ।
३ राम ने सीता से विवाह किया ।
४ वह हिन्दी में बात कर रहा था ।
५ मेम साहब रसोई में गई ।
६ ये चारों उस की लड़कियाँ हैं ।
७ उसकी बहिन कितने वर्ष की है ?
८ मैं बाग में से उसके घर गया ।
९ वह औरत चलती गाड़ी पर से कूद पड़ी ।
१० इन लड़कों में सब से अच्छा कौन है ?

2. Translate into Hindi:

1 He has two daughfers.
2 She bought eight silver plates.
3 He is smaller than I (am).
4 Dick was coming from Calcutta.
5 I fill this pot with water.
6 Hira Lal is good at reading and writing.
7 He is speaking in Bengali,
8 They will stay here for two days.
9 How old are you ?
10 Cut this branch with an axe.

LESSON 50.

COMPOUND POSTPOSITIONS (सम्बन्ध बोधक)

1. **The following are preceded by के**

ABOVE के ऊपर, से अधिक--

उसकी अवस्था बारह वर्ष के ऊपर है।

He is above twelve years of age.

ABOUT के लगभग, के विषय में, करीब (Urdu)—

इस समय लगभग तीन बजे हैं।

It is about three o'clock now.

मैं उसके विषय में कुछ नहीं जानता।

I do not know anything about him.

AFTER के पीछे, के बाद, के उपरान्त—

वह एक वर्ष के बाद लौटा।

He returned after one year.

एक के पीछे एक खड़े हो।

Stand one after another.

वे राजकुमार के सामने खड़े थे

They stood before the prince.

ACCORDING TO के अनुसार, के अनुकूल--

मेरी सलाह के अनुसार काम करो।

Do as I tell you to do.

ACROSS के पार, बीच से—

हम नदी के पार रहते हैं।

We live **across** the river.

मैदान के बीच से एक सड़क जाती है।

A road runs **across** the plain.

AGAINST के विरुद्ध, प्रतिकूल, विपरीत, खिलाफ (Urdu)

यह नियम के विरुद्ध है।

It is **against** the rule.

AROUND के आस पास--

गाँव के आस पास जंगल है।

There is a forest **around** the village.

BEFORE के आगे, सामने, पहले, पूर्व—

चार बजे से पहले घर मत आओ।

Do not go home **before** 4 o'clock.

वे राजकुमार के सामने खड़े थे।

They stood **before** the prince.

BEHIND (see after)

BELOW के लिये, तले

BENEATH " "

यह एक पत्थर के नीचे है।

It lies **beneath** this stone.

BESIDES के सिवा, अतिरिक्त--

तुम्हारे सिवा उसके और भी मित्र हैं :

He has other friends besides you.

BETWEEN के बीच--

आगरा और देहली के बीच २५ स्टेशन हैं

There are twenty five stations **BETWEEN** Agra and Delhi.

FOR के लिये, निमित्त, वास्ते ।

मैं उसके लिये एक चित्र लाऊँगा ।

I will bring a picture for him.

IN FRONT OF के सामने, आगे—

वे राजा के सामने खड़े हुए ।

They stood in front of the king.

INSIDE के भीतर—

इस घर के भीतर एक आदमी है ।

There is a man inside the house.

INSTEAD के बदले, पलटे--

उस के बदले उसका भाई आयेगा ।

His brother will come in his stead.

LIKE के समान, तुल्य, सदृश—

उसका चेहरा अपने पिता के समान है ।

His face is like his father's.

MIDDLE के बीच--

मैं नदी के बीच जाऊँगा।

I shall go to the middle of the river.

NEAR के पास, नजदीक, (Urdu) समीप, निकट

मेरे घर के पास एक बड़ा पेड़ है।

There is a big tree near my house.

ON ACCOUNT OF के कारण (see because)

ON BOTH SIDES के आस पास (see around)

OVER के ऊपर

नदी के ऊपर एक पुल है।

There is a bridge over the river.

REGARDING के विषय में see about)

ROUND ABOUT के आसपास (see around)

THROUGH के द्वारा, हाथ (per) से--

मुझे उस आदमी के द्वारा (से) एक चिट्ठी मिली।

I got a letter through that man.

WITH के साथ, संग—

वह मेरे साथ आया He came with me.

WITHOUT के बिना

बिना आज्ञा अन्दर आना मना है

No admission without permission.

The following are preceded by की (of)

LIKE की नाईं, तरह, भाँति (see समान)

THAN की अपेक्षा, से

वह कपड़ा उसकी अपेक्षा अच्छा है।

This cloth is better **than** that.

TOWARDS तरफ, ओर

फौज शहर की ओर रवाना हुई।

The army marched **towards** the city.

The following are preceded by से

BEYOND से परे

नदी से परे एक गांव है।

Beyond the river there is a village.

OUTSIDE से बाहर

नगर से बाहर एक जंगल है।

There is a forest **outside** the city.

NOTE—Sometimes का, के, की, से etc. are omitted before Compound Postpositions.

EXERCISES

I. Give the Hindi of the words in black :

1 **On** the table.

2 It hangs **over** the bed.

3 He lives **over** the river.

4 Some went **before**, others followed **behInd.**
5 He stood **before** the king.
6. Come to me **before** you go.
7 Thb king spoke **first, after him** the Prime-Minister.
8 **All the three** came.
9 It was srounded by water **on all sides**
10 He sat **by** the king.

2. Translate the words in black:

1. (He stood) **over** the well —**upto** the la l ler-**between** the gates–**inside** the house–**beyond** the rive–**ON THIS SIDE** of the road—**BELOW** the roof. (He went) **TOWARDS** the gardeu—**by the way** of the village—**WITH** his father.

3 Write sentences to illustrate the use of the Postpositions :

लगभग, साथ. बिना, अनुसार, नीचे, ओर, आसपास, बाहर विषय में, बदले।

Conjunctions or Disjudctions. (संयोजक or विभाजक)

A Conjunction joins one word to anotherword or one sentence to another sentence. —Nesfield

The following are the principal Conjunctions.

1 **CUMULATIVE** और and

भी also

फिर again

2. **ADVIRSATIVE** पर or परन्तु but
किन्तु ,,
वरन् ,,
लेकिन ,,
बल्कि ,,
मगर ,,

3 **ALTERNATIVE** वा, वा, अथवा, or
यातो.........या तो or यातो or या
either........or
नहीं तो or न.........न neither....nor
चाहे.........चाहे whether....or
क्या ....क्या either....or

4, **CORDITIONAL** जो if.... ....तो then
यदि, अगर if

5. **CONCSSIVE**

यद्यपि (although)-- तथापि or तथापि nevertheless
चाहेshould, though--तोभी
even, if-- तोभी

6, **ILATIVE** तो so, therefore
इससे so, for this

7. **EXPLANATORY** कि that

क्योंकि because, us

जिसमे

तकि in order

ऐसा न हो कि lest

EXERCISES

1. Join the following sentences together:

Use और (and)

(i) मैं हिन्दी पढ़ सकता हूँ ?

मैं हिन्दी लिख सकता हूँ ?

ii) हिन्दुस्तान में गेहूँ बहुत पैदा होता है ।

यहाँ रूई बहुत पैदा होती है ।

यहाँ चावल बहुत पैदा होता है ।

Use परन्तु (but)

राम को मैंने कल बुलाया था ।

राम मेरे पास नहीं आया ।

Use क्योंकि (because)

गुरू जी ने आज राम को खूब पीटा ।

वह पाठशाला से किताब चुरा लाया था ।

Use इसलिये (therefore)

मुझ को आज बुखार आ रहा है ।

मैं आज स्कूल नहीं जाऊंगा ।

Use या तो—या (either -or)

यह पुस्तक माइनने फाड़ी है ।

यह पुस्तक राम ने फाड़ी है ।

दोनों में से एक ने फाड़ी है ।

2. Translate into Inglish :

१ जार्ज और उसके भाई ने विलियम को मारा है ।

२ मेरे पिता या भाई आज आने वाले हैं ।

३ मुझे न तुम्हारे पिता का डर है न तुम्हारा ।

४ मैंने उसे सालभर पढ़ाया पर वह फेल हो गया ।

५ जाकर हेडमास्टर से कहो कि मैं आज नहीं आ सकूँगा

६ बाघ और सिंह मांस खाते हैं ।

७ यह आ नहीं सकता क्योंकि वह बीमार था ।

८ वह चतुर है पर बड़ा आलसी है ।

९ यद्यपि वह देरी से आया था तो भी जल्दी ही चला गया ।

2. Translate into Hindi :

1 Go and bring the doctor.

2 Shila or Lila is coming today.

3 He will neither speak himself nor let any one else speak.

4 I gave him sweets because he was hungry.

5 Owing to his illness he could not come.

6 Although he is clever he does not work hard.

7 He can read but he cannot write.

8 I know that he is a good man.

9 Neither Ram nor Rahim said this.

LESSON 52.

INTERJECTION (विस्मयादिबोधक अव्यय)

An Interjection is unlike every other Part of Speech since it does not enter into the construction of a sentence.

It is merely an exclamatory sound, thrown into a sentence to denote some strong feeling or emotion.

The following are the principal Interjections:-

हे	Vocative Case Interjection.	
जी *or* जी हाँ	A polite way of saying 'yes'	
अरे	Indicates surprise.	
रे, अबे	Expresses contempt.	
अहा	,,	admiration
ओ	,,	mingled surprise and sorrow
ओ हो	,, ,,	wonder and surprise
वाह वाह	Very good, excellent, well done. bravo	
खूब	,,	
बहुत अच्छा	,,	
शाबास	,,	

हा, हा हा, हाय Alas !

छिः Fie, for shame, away with it

छिः छिः ,,

उफ Expresses disgust,

अच्छा All right.

कहिए Hallo !

हाय रे भाग्य Ah me !

हा भगवान Oh my God !

दोहाई Here me ! help me ! I make a plaint to you

त्राहि Mercy ! shield me !

भला Well.

बस Enough.

जय Victory, success to....

जय जय ,, ,,

रामराम Do not say that.

धन्य Fortunate.

धन्यवाद Thanks.

SOME MORE ILLUSTRATIONS :

शाबास ! खूब मारा ।

Bravo ! Well done ! A capital hit !

ओ मुझे बड़ी चोट है । Oh ! I am badly hurt.

अहा कैसा सुन्दर दिन है Oh ! what a lovely day !

हाय ! अब मैं कहाँ जाऊँ ? Alas! where am I to go now?

हा ! दुर्भाग्य Woe is me !

छिः छिः तुम्हारा यह काम

Shame ! you have done such a deed !

महाराज की जय !

Hip Hip Hurrah ! Three cheers for the Maharaja (King)

कैसे दुख की बात है ! What a pity !

कैसा आश्चर्य है ! How strange !

कैसी मूर्खता है ! What nonsense !

क्यों ? इसको मारो तो देखूँ Pish ! dare you beat him.

EXERCISES

1. Translate into English.

१ आपकी चिट्ठी मिली, धन्यवाद।

२ कहो भाई ! कहाँ से आना हुआ ?

३ क्यों मित्र, अच्छे तो हो।

४ अरे ! इस में तो कोई प्रेत बैठा है।

५ अच्छा ! मैं अवश्य आऊँगा।

६ बस, अब मत खेलो।

७ शाबाश, शाबाश ! लगाओ जोर, लगाओ जोर।

८ भला मुझे चौपाया कौन कह सकता है ?

९ वाह ! कुयें से समुद्र क्योंकर बड़ा हो सकता है।
१० हे ईश्वर ! मेरी जान बचाने के लिये तूने ही उसे भेजा था

Translation into Hindi:

1 Oh ! how beautiful this garden is ?
2 Is it not a lovely day ?
3 Long live the King.
4 Oh ! she is badly hurt.
5 Marvellous ! see what a huge fish.
6 I thank you very much.
7 yes, I am here.
8 well done ! it was a splendid play!
9 For pity's sake ! do not do this.
10 Right oh ! come tomorrow at ten o'clock.

LESSON 53.

PREFIXES (उपसर्ग)

Prefix	Meaning	Examples
अ	Negation	अन्याय injustice
अन	,,	अनमोल priceless
बे	,,	बेकाम without work
अप	defect	अपमान insult
अनु	after, according to, inferior	अनुवाद translation अनुकूल in accordance with
अभि	Superior, before	अभिमान pride

प्रति	opposition, substitution, repetition	प्रतिदिन day by day प्रतिवाद opposition
उप	inferiority, nearness	उपवन small garden, park उपस्थित standing near
कु	bad	कुपुत्र unworthy son
दुस् or दुर्	,,	दुर्गंध foul smell
सु	good	सुशील of good nature (conduct)
निस or निर्	negation	निर्बल powerless
पर	distant	परदेशी foreignor
परा	the reverse	पराजय defeat
परि	around	परिश्रम hard work
प्र	excess	प्रयत्न great effort
वि	disjunctive	विरोध foreign country विधवा widow (without husband)
स	conjunctive	सफल fruitful
सह	with	सहपाठी class fellow

EXERCISES

1 Write twelve Hindi words in which अ निर् or निस, वे, सु, दुर, उप, प्रति, पर, वि, स and कु are found.

2 Use the following words in sentences :—
अपमान, अभिमान, अनुवाद, सुशील, विधवा, दुर्गंध

LESSON 54

SUFFIXES (प्रत्यय)

Suffixes can be divided into two classes :

1. कृदन्त Noun formed from Verbs as लिखने वाला writer from लिखना

2. तद्धित " " Nouns as दूध वाला milkman from दूध

कृदन्त VERBAL NOUN)

The Verbal Nouns are formed from a Verbal base.

1. कर्तृवाचक संज्ञा, NOUN OF AGENCY indicates a doer and is formed by adding वाला to the inflected infinitives :

Verb	Noun
लिखना	लिखने वाला writer
बोलना	बोलने वाला speaker
सुनना	सुनने वाला listner

Some other Examples :

पालना	पालक preserver
करना	कारक (कर्ता) doer
गाना	गवैया singer

2. कर्मवाचक संज्ञा Indicates the act done and is formed from a Perfect Participle by adding हुआ (see the lesson on Use of Participles).

खाना	to eat	खाया हुआ	eaten
देखना	to see	देखा हुआ	seen
पढ़ना	to read	पढ़ा हुआ	read

3. करणवाचक संज्ञा (Instrumntal Noun) indicates an instrumen by which the act is done.

कतरना	to cut	कतरनी	scissors
झूलना	to swing	झूला	swing

4. भाववाचक संज्ञा (Abtract Nouns).

(i) The stem or root alone :

दौड़ना	to run	दौड़	running or a race
समझना	to understand	समझ	understandig

(ii) The stem lengthened :

चलना	to go	चाल	walk
पढ़ना	to read	पाठ	lesson

(iii) Some other examples :

सीना	to sew	सिलाई	sewing
बुनना	to weave	बुनाई	weaving
देखना	to see	दिखाव	show, display

घबराना to worry		घबराहट worry	
चिल्लाना to cry		चिल्लाहट outcry	

तद्धित

NOUNS (and Adjectives) COMPOUNDED OF A NOUN AND A SUFFIX.

1. अपत्यवाचक (Petronymics) अपत्य means offspring This class of Noun includes words, meaning descendants, followers and nationality :

पाण्डु	Pandu	पाण्डव the decendent of	पाण्डु
कुरू	Kurn	कौरव ,,	कुरु
शिव	God Shiva	शैव a worshipper of	शिव
ईसा	Jesus	ईसाई a follower of	ईसा
बुद्ध	Budha	बौद्ध ,,	बुद्ध
पंजाब	Punjab	पंजाबी a man from	पंजाब
लखनऊ	Lucknow	लखनवी ,,	लखनऊ

2. कर्तृवाचक (Noun of Agency)

दूधवाला	milkman.
रोटी वाला	baker
कोयलावाला	charcoal-dealer
लकड़हारा	woodcutter.
गाड़ीवान	cartman.

सुनार	goldsmith.
दूकानदार	shopkeeper

3. भाववाचक (Abstract Noun)

मूर्ख	fool	मूर्खता	foolishness
चतुर	clever	चतुराई	cleverness
मनुष्य	man	मनुष्यत्व	manhood
बालक	child	बालकपन	childhoo
बूढ़ा	old	बुढ़ापा	oldage

4. गुणवाचक (Adjectival Nouns and Adjectives)

धन	धनवान	wealthy
दया	दयालु	merciful
भूख	भूखा	hungry
प्यास	प्यासा	thirsty
मास	मासिक	monthly
दिन	दैनिक	daily
सप्ताह	साप्ताहिक	weekly

5. ऊनवाचक संज्ञा (Diminutives) ऊन means deficient. It is formed by adding ई or इया :—

जूता	shoe	जूती	slipper
रस्सा	roap	रस्सी	string
पत्ता	leaf	पत्ती	small leaf

थैला	bag	थैली	small bag, purse
गोला	ball	गोली	bullet, pill, small ball
डिब्बा	small box	डिबिया	very small box
बेटी	daughter	बिटिया	little daughter (for affection)
खाट	bed-steeb	खटिया	small ded-stead
टोकरा	basket	टोकरी	small basket

EXERCISES

1. Write twelve Hindi words in which the follow ing snffixes are used:--

पन, क, वाला, ई, वान, इक, इट, हारा, आई, इया

2. To illustrate the use of suffixes, use the follow ing words in sentences :

भूखा, दैनिक, टोकरी, थैली, पंजाबी, ईसा

3 Illustrate the use of the Noun of agency dy translating the following into Hindi:—

The milkman is bringing milk.

The mail will come shortly.

He who knows, the language of the country can go there.

He is about to make the journey to Simla.



Chapter X

LESSON 55

Direct Speech

In English what a person is reported to have said may be expressed in either af two ways. For exam ple we may say,

EITHER

The boy said, "My father is ill."

OR

The boy said that his father was ill.

The former is called Direct Speech and the latter Indirect Speech. In Hindi only Direct Speech is used but the Conjunction कि that is generally plcced before the exact words spoken.

Never mind what tenhe is used in the first part of the sentence Quote the speaker's exact words and begin with कि and join it with the first part. Thus the above sentence becomes :

लड़के ने कहा कि मेरा बाप बीमार है।
साईस को बोलो कि घोड़ा लाओ।

Tell the groom to bring the horse.

OR

साईस को कहो कि घोड़ा लावे ।

नौकर के मन में आया कि माल लेकर भागे ।

It occured to the servent to take away the goods.

EXERCISES

2. Translate into English :

१ राम कहता है कि वह दिल्ली जायगा ।

२ उस के मन में आया कि मैं यह पुस्तक पढ़ूं ।

३ जॉन ने कहा मैं अपने भाई को बुलाऊँगा ।

४ दूकानदार से पूछो कि उस के पास टोप है या नहीं ।

५ मास्टर ने लड़कों से कहा कि कल यह पाठ अवश्य याद कर लेना

2. Translate into Hindi :

1 Ram says, "I am ill."
2 He asked me whether I was going there.
3 The teacher said, "The earth moves round the sun"
4 John said that he would not go to Delhi.
5 She told me that she had four sons and daughters.

LESSON 56

Parsing.

For parsing a word, the students should follow the following method.

1. Noun

1 What kind ? (Proper, Common, Collective; Material or Abstract .

2. What Gender ? (Masculine or Feminine)
3. What Number ? (Singular or Plural)
4. What Case ? (Nominative, Accusative etc.)
5. What relation with the Verb etc. ?

Example.

माता ने लड़के को दूध दिया ।

माता ने Common Noun, Feminine, Singular, Nominative Case, Subject to the Verb दिया

लड़के को Common Noun, Masculine, Singular, Dative Case, Indirect Object to the Verb दिया

दूध Common Noun, Masculine, Singular, Accusative Case, Direct object to the Verb दिया

Pronoun

1. Kind. 2. Person. 3. Gender. 4. Number. 5. Case. 6. Relation with the Verb etc.

Example

मैं उसके घर जाता हूँ ।

मैं Personal Pronoun, First Person, Masculine, Singular, Nominative Case, Subject to the Verb जाना.

उसके Personal Pronoun, Third Person, Masculine Singular, Genitive Case.

Adjective

1. What kind ? 2. What Noun or Pronoun it qualifies.

वह साफ कपड़े पहिनता है।

साफ Descriptive Adjective. Qualifies the Noun कपड़े।

Verb.

1 What Kind ? (Trnsitive or Intransitive

2 What Voice ? (Active or Passive)

What Tense ? (Present Imperfect, Past Imperfect etc.)

4 What Peson ?

5 What Gender ?

6 What Number ?

7 What Relation with the Subject ?

Example

मैं दूध पीता हूँ।

पीता हूँ—Transitive Verd, Active Voice, Present Imperfeci Tense, First Person, Masculine Gender, Singular Number, Verb to the Subject मैं.

Adverb

(1) Kind (2) Modifies the verb.

Example.

राम कहाँ गया ?

कहाँ—Adverb of place, modifies the Verb
गया।

EXERCISES

1. Parse the words underlined in the following sentences :

१ राम ने बाण से रावण को मारा ।
२ लोटा कुएँ में गिर गया ।
३ उस ने मुझे एक पुस्तक दी ।
४ बीस लड़के आये हैं ।
५ यह किताब मेरी है ।
६ जो जैसा करेगा सो वैसा पायगा ।
७ वह सोता होगा ।
८ आप कब वहाँ गये थे ।

LESSON 57.

Syntax I,

CONCORD.

Syntax is that aspect of Grammar which treats of the relationship of words when they are used in sentences and their arrangement.

Syntax is divided into two parts (1) Order of words. (2) Agreement.

The Order of Words in Sentences

1. The Nominative comes first and the Verb last.

   लड़के जाते हैं The boys are going.

   लड़कियाँ पढ़ती हैं The girls are reading.

2. The Accusative comes between the Nominative and the Verb.

   लड़के दूध पीते हैं। Boys drink milk.

   लड़कियाँ पुस्तकें पढ़ती हैं grils read books.

3. The Dative generally comes before the Accusative.

   उसने भिखारी को एक पैसा दिया।

   He gave one piece to the beggar.

   मैं तुम्हारे लिये मिठाई लाऊँगा।

   I shall bring sweets for you.

4. The Instrumental and the Ablative Cases comes immediately before the Accusative.

   राम ने बन्दूक से चिड़िया को मारा।

   Ram killed the bird with his gun.

   वह हाथी पर से गिर पड़ा।

   He fell down from the elephant.

5. The Locative Case sometimes comes early in a sentence and sometimes in the middle.

घर में कोई नहीं है। There is no one in the house.

तुम्हारी जेब में क्या है ?

What is there in your pocket ?

नदी के तट पर एक बड़ा पेड़ है।

There is a big tree on the bank of the river.

6. The Adjective is generally placed before the Noun.

काला घोड़ा A black horse.

ऊँचा मकान A big house.

काली टोपी A black hat.

7. Interjection comes at the beginnig.

अहा ! कैसी सुन्दर रात है।

Oh ! what a lovely night.

EXERCISES

1. Correct the following sentences changing the order of words :

१ दौड़ता हूँ मैं ।

२ किताब लिलि पढ़ती है।

३ खेलते हैं भाई बहिन एक साथ।

४ है देखा मोर मैंने।

५ गई सीता राम के साथ बन में ।

६ बज रहा है पियानो उस कमरे में।

७ पढ़ी है वह पुस्तक तुमने ।
८ दिये कुछ फल उसने मुझको ।
९ कागज लाओ सफेद ।
१० खेल कैसा अच्छा है वाह !
११ बहुत तेज चलती है रेलगाड़ी ।
१२ अच्छे तो हो मित्र !

LESSON 58.

Syntax II

AGREEMENT .

1. When the Po tposit:on ने 'or से is not used with the Subject the Verb agrees with it in Number and Gender. But a Plural Verb can be used for the sako of respect.

मैं पुस्तक पढ़ता हूँ I am reading a book.
वे बाज़ार को जाते हैं They are going to the market.
लूसी लिखती है Lucy is writing.
सूरज चमकता है The sun shines.
But मेरे पिता जी आते हैं My father is coming.
गुरू जी उसे बुलाते हैं The teacher is calling him.

2. If the Subject has ने with it and the Object is without को the Verb agrees with the Object in Number and Gender.

मैंने पांच आम खाये — I ate five mangoes.

उसने रोटी खायी — He ate bread.

3. If को is used with the Object, the Verb takes the form of the Masculine Singular.

मैंने किताब को पढ़ा — I read the book.

हमने किताबों को पढ़ा — We read the books.

लड़कों ने लड़कियों को देखा — The boys saw the girls.

4. With the exception of the Perfect Tenses of Transitive Verbs in the Present and Past Tenses the Verb agrees with the Nominative in Number and Gender.

Present Tense	लड़का खेलता है	A boy is playing.
	लड़के खेलते हैं	Boys are playing.
	लड़की खेलती है	A girl is playing.
Past Tense	लड़के खेलते थे	Boys were playing.
	लड़किया खेलती थीं	Girls were playing.
Future Tense	लड़के खेलेंगे	Boys will play.
	लड़कियां खेलेंगी	Girls will play.
But	लड़के ने पुस्तक पढ़ी	
	लड़की ने भात खाया	

5. (a) If there are more than one Nominative the Verb agrees with the nearest in Number & Gender.

दो लड़के और तीन लड़कियां पैदा हुईं ।

Two sons and three daughter were born.

दस आदमी और पाँच स्त्रियां जा रही थी ।

Ten men and five women were going.

(b) OR the Verb is placed in the Masculine Plural

सोहन और मोहन लिखते हैं ।

Sohan anb mohrn are writing.

राम और सीता वन को गये ।

Ram and Sita went to the forest.

6. If two or more Nominatives (withous ने) are disjoined by या or न, the Verb will be in the Singular:

राम या लक्ष्मण आता है ।

Ram or Lakshman is coming.

न वह आता है और न उसका भाई ।

Neither he nor his brother is coming.

7, When ther are two or more Verbs in a sentence the Nominative is used only once:

देवदत्त रोटी खायेगा और दूध पीयेगा ।

Devadatt will eat bread and drink milk.

वह न पढ़ता है और न पढ़ने देता है।

Neither he himself reads nor does he allow others to read.

8. When more than one pronoun of different Persons are used as Nominatives in a sentence the Verb agrees with the first Person. If there are only second and third person the Verb agrees with the second Person :

हम, तुम और मोहन चलेंगे।

Mohan, You and I will go.

वह, तुम और हम खेलेंगे।

He, you and we will play.

मोहन और तुम जाओगे।

Mohan and you will go.

मैं और तुम खेलेंगे।

You and I will play.

9. A Pronoun is a substitute word for a Noun So it takes the Number and Gender of the Noun it stands for.

मैंने राम को बुलाया था पर वह नहीं आया।

I called Ram but he did not come.

लड़कियाँ आने वाली थीं, पर वे नहीं आईं।
Gi1ls were ɩxpected to come but they did uot come

10. Adjectives agree in Number and Gender with the Noun they qualify :

छोटा लड़का A small boy.
छोटे लड़के small boys.
छोटी लड़की A small girl.
छोटी लड़कियां small girls,

11. If there is only one Adjective to qualify more than one Noun, it agrees with the nearest Noun in Number and Genber.

छोटे लड़के और लड़कियां small boys and girls.
छोटी लड़कियां और लड़के small girls and boys.

EXERCISES

1. Rewrite the following sentences after correcting the mistakes :

१ यह लड़की रूमाल सी रहा है।
२ यह लड़का हॉकी खेल रहे हैं।
३ हम स्कूल का जाता हूँ।
४ तुम स्कूल को क्यों नहीं जाता है।

५ धोबी कपड़े धो लाई है ।
६ तुम यहाँ से चला जा ।
७ वह तुम और मैं कलकत्ता जायेंगे ।
८ मेरी पुस्तकें उसने ही चुरा लिया है ।
९ राम बोला मैं नहीं जानती ।
१० गोरी लड़का अखबार पढ़ता है ।
११ शेक्सपियर एक बहुत बड़ी कवि थे ।
१२ लड़की का पुस्तक वहाँ पड़ा है ।
१३ जो हम वहाँ जाऊँगा तो तुम भी मेरे साथ चलेगा ।
१४ उस ने वह भूला है ।
१५ राजा ने उसको पांच रुपया दिया ।
१६ तुम क्या करेगा ।
१७ वह आदमी को बुलाओ ।
१८ इन में से कोई बुरे है ।
१९ राम रावण को मारे ।
२० लड़की भात खाने मांगता है ।

LESSON 59

Common Errors

100 Hindi Words for Dictation

We give below a list of 100 words which are very common but often spelt wrong.

1 अच्छा
2 खाता
3 क्या
4 पढ़ता
5 गया
6 लड़कियाँ
7 स्त्री
8 भी
9 चिड़ियाँ
10 गाय
11 चिल्लाता
12 उन्हें
13 कुछ
14 था
15 हाथ
16 बड़ा
17 बैल
18 दौड़ना
19 पकड़ना
20 तुम्हारा
21 भेजना
22 मुझे
23 लकड़ी
24 पत्थर
25 खोलना
26 लिखना
27 लिफ़ाफ़ा
28 थक जाना
29 दूकान
30 थोड़ा
31 खेत
32 छाता
33 पत्ता
34 मनुष्य
35 पीछ
36 थक
37 फूल
38 भूख
39 कुआँ
40 साथ
41 झूठ
42 प्याला
43 चाय
44 बच्चा
45 दाल
46 भात
47 दिन
48 कुर्सी
49 ताला
50 घंटा
51 गाड़ी
52 मछली
53 जल्दी
54 पहुँचा
55 कपड़ा
56 पेड़
57 कभी
58 दूसरा
59 करूँगा
60 देखूँगा
61 सिर
62 दिया
63 कुत्ता
64 ऊँचा
65 घूमता
66 तू
67 नाचे
68 चढ़ना
69 चरना
70 पूरा
71 आओ
72 डालना
73 दूध
74 चिट्ठी
75 खट्टा
76 अभी
77 खड़ा
78 बीस
79 बिल्ली
80 चूहा
81 गई
82 मीठा
83 मिठाई
84 भीतर
85 नीला
86 पीला
87 डाली
88 धूप
89 फूल
80 छूना
91 बाघ
92 बूढ़ा
93 छुट्टा
94 पक्का
95 पुस्तक
96 महीना
97 हमारा
98 छाता, छतरी
99 इकट्ठा
100 गधा, गदहा

आता	coming	आटा	flour
पिता	father	पीता	drinking
चरना	to graze	चढ़ना	to climb
कुली	porter	खुली	open (fem)
पुल	bridge	फूल	flower
बार	time	भार	burden
सात	seven	साठ	sixty सात seven
सादी	simple (fem)	शादी	wedding
भात	rice	बात	word
रोती	crying (fem)	रोटी	bread
तोता	parrot	टोटा	loss
मोती	pearl	मोटी	fat (fem)
पर (पंख)	feather	पार	across, other side
बुरा	bad	बूढ़ा	old
बाग	garden	बाघ	tiger
कड़ा	hard, firm, bracelet	खड़ा	standing erect.
पता	address	पत्ता	leaf
चूना	lime	छूना	to touch
गड़ा	buried	घड़ा	jar
पड़ना	to lie	पढ़ना	to read
सास	mother-in-law	साँस	breath
मास	month	माँस	meat,flesh
बास	odour	बाँस	bamboo
शहर	city	शहद	honey

LESSON 60

Common Errors

1 आ is not changed to ए (े) with Postposition :

Incorrect   लड़का को बुलाओ।

Correct   लड़के को बुलाओ।

Incorrect   बड़ा घोड़ा पर चढ़ो।

Correct   बड़े घोड़े पर चढ़ो।

Note—Most of the Masculine Nouns and Adjectives ending in आ change into ए when they are followed by a Postposition,

2. आ is incorrectly changed.

Incorrect   पाठशाले में जाओ।

correct   पाठशाला में जाओ।

Incorrect   बुढ़िये का घर कहाँ है ?

correct   बुढ़िया का घर कहाँ है ?

NOTE—In the above sentences आ belonging to the Feminine Nouns is changed into ए. It should not be changed

3 Pronouns not changed with Postpositions:

Incorrect   वह ने लिखा।

Correct   उसने लिखा।

Incorrect मुझ के लिये पानी लाओ ।

Correct मेरे लिये पानी लाओ ।

NOTE--See the declensions of Pronoun and notice the changes in all cases.

4. को is omitted:

Incorrect तुम क्या मिला ।

Correct तुमको क्या मिला ।

Incorrect वह क्या चाहिए ?

Correct उसको क्या चाहिए ?

ने is omitted :

Incorrect मैं उसको कहा ,

Correct मैंने उसको कहा ।

Incorrect मैं उसका घर देखा ।

Correct मैंने उसका घर देखा ।

NOTE--ने is used wirh the Nominative Case if the Verb is Transitive and made of Perfect Participle.

6, ने is misused :

Incorrect मैंने बोला ।

Correct मैं बोला ।

Incorrect उसने भूल गया ।

Correct वह भूल गया ।

Note—बोलना, भूलना, बकना, लाना, and लेजाना are exceptions to the previous rule and ने should not be used with them in any case.

7. **Singular Verb is used with आप (your honour).**

Incorrect आप कहां जाता है ?

Correct आप कहां जाते हैं ?

8. **A Singular Verb is used with the honorific persons.**

Incorrect मेरे पिता कलकत्ता गया।

Correct मेरे पिता कलकत्ता गये ।

NOTE--In Hindi Plural Verb is used with a Singular Subject to denote respect.

9. **Personal Pronoun for Reflexive अपना** (own, self),

Incorrect वह उसकी पुस्तक पढ़ता है

Correct वह अपनी पुस्तक पढ़ता है ।

Incorrect तुम तुम्हारे घर जाओ।

Correct तुम अपने घर जाओ ।

Incorrect मैं मेरा काम करूंगा ।

Correct मैं अपना काम करूंगा ।

Note--अपना must be used in place of the Genitive of ony other Persons when the Pronoun has a special reference to the Subject of the Verb.

10. ह Omitted with Present Tense

Iucorrect लड़का पढ़ता ।

Correct लड़का पढ़ता है ।

Incorrect तुम कहां जाता ।

Correct तुम कहां जाते हो ?

NOTE--But with Nagative it is correct to say

तुम क्यों नहीं पढ़ते ?

वे चाय नहीं पीते ।

11. Infinitive with सकना

Incorrect तुम जाने सकना ।

Correct तुम जा सकते हो ।

NOTE—Compound Verbs with सकना are formed with the root or stem not with the Infinitives. So it is जा सकना not जाने सकना। तुम is Plural and it should take a Plural Verb.

12. मांगना for चाहना

Incorrect	मैं पढ़ना मांगता हूँ।
Correct	मैं पढ़ना चाहता हूँ।

NOTE—मांगना means 'to beg, 'to ask for', it does not mean 'to waut', 'to desire'. A servent may correctly say साहिब एक प्याला चाय मांगते हैं।

13. To have translated as 'मिलना' or 'पाना,:

Incorrect	मैने दो हाथ पाया	have two hands	
Correct	मेरे दो हाथ हैं	,,	,,
Incorrect	मैं को एक पुस्तक मिला	I have a book.	
Correct	मेरे पास एक पुस्तक है।	,,	,,

NOTE--The Hindi construction particularly differs from the English, in case of the uses of has and have. (Revise Lesson 49)

EXERCISES

1. Correct and rewrite the fcllohwing :

१ हम कहे थे तू मत जाओ ।

२ मैंने उसको बोला ।

३ हम घोड़े पर जाना माँगता है ।

४ हमारे से यह काम नहीं होने सकता ।

५ अपना लड़का को अच्छा तरह समझाओ ।

६ मोहन का पिता भोजन कर रहा है ।

७ आप कहाँ गया ?

८ कृष्ण ने द्वारका गये ।

९ तुम तुम्हारा काम करो ।

१० वह आदमी को बुलाओ ।

११ हवे से कागज उड़ गया ।

१२ वह उस के भाई को देखा ।

१३ लड़को ने उसको देखना के लिये गये हैं ।

१४ वह पांच बेटा पाया।

१५ क्या तुम यह काम काम करने सकता ?



APPENDIX.

GRAMATICAL TERMS IN HINDI

वर्णमाला	Alphabet
अक्षर or वर्ण	Letter
स्वर	Vowel
व्यंजन	Consonant
अनुस्वार (ं)	Anusnar or Nasal
अनुनासिक (ँ) or चन्द्रबिन्दु	Anunask or Nasalization
विसर्ग	Visarg, The final aspiration.
हल (्)	A closed consonant
ह्रस्व	Short Vowel
दीर्घ	Long ,,
मात्रा	A syllable or 'instant'
संयुक्त अक्षर	Conjunct letter
व्याकरण	Grammar
संज्ञा	Noun
सर्वनाम	Pronoun
विशेषण	Adjective
क्रिया	Verb
क्रिया विशेषण	Adverb
संबंध बोधक अव्यय	Postposition
संयोजक ,,	Conjunction
विभाजक ,,	Disjunction
विस्मयादिबोधक	Interjection
विभक्ति	Case suffix
उपसर्ग	Prefix
प्रत्यय	Affix
लिङ्ग	Gender
पुंल्लिङ्ग	Masculine
स्त्रीलिङ्ग	Feminine
वचन	Number
एकवचन	Singular
बहुवचन	Plural
कारक	Case
कर्त्ता	Nominative

कर्म	Accusative	पुरूष	Person
करण	Instrumental	उत्तम	First
सम्प्रदान	Dative	मध्यम	Second
अपादान	Ablative	अन्य	Third
सम्बन्ध	Genitive	वाच्य	Voice
अधिकरण	Locative	कर्तृवाच्य	Active Voice
सम्बोधन	Vocativd	कर्मवाच्य	Passive Voice
अकर्मक	Intransitive	पूर्वकालिक क्रिया	Conjunctiv Participle
काल	Tense		
वर्तमान	Present	कर्तृवाचक संज्ञा	Noun of Agency
भूत	Past		
भविष्यत्	Future	प्रेरणार्थक क्रिया	Causal Verb



PART II.



IDIOMS AND PROVERBS.



"Indioms are oonventional signs, they mean what they are intended to mean by the speaker and understood to mean by the hearer.,,

—Henry Bradley.

100 USEFUL IDIOMS.

मुहावरे

1. अंगुली उठाना	To criticise (LIT. to raise one's finger)
2. अक्ल खर्च करना	To use one's own sense.
3. अक्ल मार जाना	To lose one's senses.
4. अच्छा लगना	To please.
5. आँख आना	To have inflamd eyes.
6. आँख उठाकर न देखना	To be verv proud, to be disdainful.
7. आँख का तारा	Dearest,darliug (LIT. the apple of one's eye) used for son.
8. आँख खुलना	To rouse from sleep , to realise.
9. आँख चुराना	To avoid the sight of an. other person (LIT. to steel eyes)
10. आँख दिखाना	To frighten, to brow-beat , to look with anger.
11. आँख फूटना	To be blind , to lose one's sight.
12. आँख फेरना or फेर लेना	To withdraw one's favou or affection from any one (Lit. to turn away one's face)

13.	आँख बंद कर लेना	To neglect, to take no account of , to die
14	आंख भौं चढ़ाना	To frown.
15.	आंख मारना	To wink.
16.	आंख से गिरना	To be out of favour (LIT to fall from one's eyes.)
17.	आंखों में धूल डालना	To throw dust into on's eyes, to decieve, to cheat.
18	आंसू भर लाना	To weep (lit. to bring tears into the eyes)
19	आंसू पोंछना	To wipe away the tears, to console.
20	आगा पीछा करना	To hesitate, to waver, to linger.
21	आग बबूला होना	To flare up.
22	आग होना	To be very angree.
23	आग लगना	To break out (fire)
24	आजकल करना	To evade, to put off.
25	आदमी बनाना	To teach good manners.
26	आना कानी करना	To connive at, to make an excuse.
27	उल्लू बनाना	To befool, to cheat.
28	कंठ करना	To get by heart.

29	कमर कसना	To prepare, to get ready.
30	कमर टूटना	To be broken, to lose spirit to de hopeless.
31	कलेजे पर सांप लोटना	To suffer envy or jealousy to be distressed at another's success.
32	कसम खाकर कहना	To say on oath.
33	काँटों में घसीटना	To drag into difficulties.
34	कान काटना	To surpass, to outwit, (lit. to cut off one's ears).
35	कान देना	To listen.
36	कान खड़ा करना	To be alarmed.
37	कान में अंगुली देना	To turn a deaf ear.
38	कान पर जूं न रेंगना	To be careless.
39	काम चलाना	Ta carry on.
40	काम चोर होना	To shirk work.
41	काम तमाम करना	To kill, to finish.
42	खाक में मिलना	To be ruined.
43	खून करना	To murder, to assassinate to waste.
44	खिल्ली उड़ाना	To make fun of, to ridicule
45	गप हाँकना	To indulge in gossip.
46	गला बैठना	To become hoarse

47 घाव पर नमक छिड़कना	To aggravative the trouble (lit. to apply salt to the wound).
48 चल बसना	To die.
49 चिकनी चुपड़ी बातें करना	To flatter, (lit. to use oily speech).
50 चूं न करना	To keep quiet
51 जान पर खेलना	To risk one's life.
52 जी चुराना	To shirk work.
53 टक्कर खाना	To be dashed against any thing to suffer loss or damage.
54 टका सा जवाब देना	To give a flat reply.
55 टाँग अड़ाना	To meddle with another's affairs, to poke one's nose into
56 ठोकर खाना	To stumble.
57 डंके की चोट कहना	To declare publicly.
58 ताली बजाना	To clap hands.
59 तीन तेरह होना	Scattered, dispersed.
60 तीन पाँच करना	To quarrel.
61 थर थर काँपना	To tremble, to quiver.
62 दाँत तले अँगुली दबाना	To be amazed, to wonder.
63 दाँत खट्टे करना	To dishearten, to defeat, to teach a lesson, to sour the teeth

64 दाल गलना	To avail or be effective, to be successful.
65 दाल में काला	Something wrong
66 दुम दबाकर भागना	To turn tail.
67 दुःख भोगना	To suffer.
68 धीरज रखना	To have patience.
69 नमक हलाल निकलना	To turn out faithful.
70 नमक हराम निकलना	To turn out unfaithful.
71 नाक काटना	To humilate (to cut one's nose).
72 नाकों दम करना	To worry.
73 नौ दो ग्यारह होना	To run away, to disappear.
74 पानी में आग लगाना	To revive a contention which has subsided.
75 पेट पालना	To live from hand to mouth.
76 पेट भरना	To receive enough to live upon, to be satisfied.
77 पीठ दिखाना	To flee.
78 पेट में चूहे कूदना	To feel very hungry.
79 पैसा उड़ाना	To spend extravagantly.
80 फूटी आँखों न भाना	To dislike.
81 फूला न समाना	To be overjoyed.
82 बगुला भगत होना	To pretend, to be a hypocrite.
83 बात पूछना	To enquire after one's welfare, to receive.

84	बाल बाँका न होना	To be without the least harm or inconvenience.
85.	बिगड़ना	To be annoyed.
86	विदा लेना	To take leave.
87	मन का लड्डू खाना	To build castles in the air.
88.	मुँह काला होना	To be disgraced.
89.	मुँह खोलना	To speak (LIT. to open the mouth.)
90.	मुँह बनाना	To make faces.to mock.
91.	मुँह में पानी भर आना	To make the mouth water,
92.	मोल तोल करना	To bargain.
93.	राह देखना	To wait.
94.	सिर में चक्कर आना	To have headache giddiness
95.	सूखकर काँटा होना	To become very weak.
96.	हवा खाने जाना	To go for a walk or riding.
97.	हवा से बात करना	To run very fest.
98.	हाथ खींचना	To refrain. to abstain.
99	हाथ मलकर रह जाना	To regret, to repent, to lament.
100.	हाथ मारना	To acpuire. to succeed.

50 PROVERBS

कहावतें

१ एक पन्थ दो काज।

1 To kill two birds with one stone.

२ जिस की लाठी उस की भैंस।

2 Might is right.

३ जब तक साँस तब तक आस।

3 While there is life. there is hope.

४ जो गरजता है वह बरसता नहीं।

4 Barking dogs seldom bite.

५ जैसा करोगे वैसा पाओगे।

5 As you sow, so shall you reap.

६ डूबते को तिनके का सहारा।

6 A drowning man catches at a straw.

७ आप मियां मिट्ठू न बनो।

7 Self-praise is no recommendation.

८ अपने दही को कोई खट्टा नहीं कहता।

8 No one looks to his own faults.

९ एक हाथ से ताली नहीं बजती।

9 It takes two to.quarrel,

१० जैसे को तैसा।

10 Tit for tat.

११ नाच न जाने आंगन टेढ़ा।

11 A bad workman quarrels with his tools.

१२ ऊँची दूकान फीका पकवान।

12 Much cry little wool.

१३ नौनगद न तेरह उधार।

13 A bird in the hand is worth two in the bush.

१४ ख्याली पोलाव पकाना।

14. To bulid castles in the air.

१५ जहाँ चाह है वहाँ राह है।

15. Where there is a will, there is a way.

१६ चोर चोर मौसिऔत भाई।

16 Birds of a feather flock together.

१७ मित्र वही है जो विपत्ति में काम आवे।

17 A friend in need is a friend indeed.

१८ चोर की दाढ़ी में तिनका।

18 A guilty mind is always suspicious.

१९ जल्दी काम शैतान का।

19 Haste makes waste (Hurry makes bad curry)

२० रुपया में रुपया होता है ।

20 Money begets money.

२१ बिना परिश्रम धन नहीं मिलता ।

21 No pains no gains.

२२ खट्टे अंगूर कौन खाय ।

22 Grapes are sour

२३ काम प्यारा कि चाम प्यारा ।

23 Handsome is that handsome does.

२४ दूर का ढोल सुहावना ।

24 Distant drums sound well.

२५ जैसादेश वैसा भेष ।

25 Do in Rome as the Romans do.

२६ बुद्धिमान् को इशारा काफी ।

26 A word to the wise.

२७ जो कुछ बचा सो ही कमाया ।

27 A penny saved is a penny gained.

२८ पेट में डाढ़ी है ।

28 An old head on young shoulders.

२९ चोरी का गुड़ मीठा ।

29 Stolen waters are sweet.

३० आगे दौड़ पीछे चौड़ ।

30 Fast run, fast lose.

३१ कल करे सो आज कर ।

31 Do not put off till to-morrow what you can do to lay.

३२ दुख के बिना सुख नहीं होता ।

32 There is no rose without a thorn.

३३ आप भला तो जग भला ।

33 Good mind, good find.

३४ घमण्डी का सिर नीचा ।

34 Pride goes before a fall.

३५ मुंह में राम राम बगल में छुरी ।

35 Beads about the neck and devil in the heart.

३६ गया वक्त फिर आता नहीं ।

36 The past cannot come back again.

३७ बन्दर क्या जाने अदरक का स्वाद ।

37 The blind cannot judge colours.

३८ बने बने के सब कोई साथी ।

38 Friends are plenty when the purse is full.

३९ अब पछताये क्या होत है जब चिड़िया चुग गई खेत ।

39 No use in crying over spilt milk.

४० देखिये ऊँट किस करवट बैठता है।

40 Which way the wind blows !

४१ सांच को आंच नहीं।

41 Pure gold does not fear the flame.
Clear conscience fears no accusation.

४२ उलटा चोर कोतवाल को डांटे।

42 A thief threatens the constable.

४३ नया धोबी कपड़े में कलप देता है।

43 A new broom sweeps well.

४४ थोथा चना बाजे घना।

44 An empty vessel makes much noise.

४५ बूँद बूँद से घट भरे।

45 Many a little makes a mickle.

४६ दूध का जला छांछ को फूँक फूँक कर पीता है।

46 The burnt child dreads the fire.

४७ जितने मुँह उतनी बात।

47 As many men so many minds.

४८ जितनी चादर देखो उतना ही पैर फैलाओ।

48 Cut your coat according to your cloth.

४९ [illegible] अपने घर के सब राजा।

49 The mouse is the mistress of her hole.

५० अहमद की पगड़ी महमूद के सिर पर।

50 To rob Peter to pay Paul.



PART III

TRANSLATION



50 Exercises from English into Hindi with notes on difficult words and phrases.

EXERCISE 1.

A. What is this ?

B It is a *pen*[1].

A. *Whose*[2] pen is it ?

B. It is my pen.

A. What will you do with it ?

B. I shall write with it.

A. *On what*[3] will you write ?

B. On *paper*[4].

A. *Which*[5] paper ?

B. This paper.

A. *Pick*[6] *up* your pen. *Put*[7] your pen down. Pick up your book. Put your book down.

B. I pick up my pen. I put it down. I pick up my book. I put it down. I *hold*[8] it in my *right*[9] hand. I hold it in my *left*[10] hand.

10 बायें
5 किस 6 उठा लो 7 नीचे रख दो 8 पकड़ता हूँ 9 दाहिने
1 कलम (F.) 2 किसकी 3 किस पर 4 क़ागज़ (M.)

EXERCISE 2.

When do you go to school ? I go to school at *half-past ten*[1]. Do you go to school *every day*[2] ? Yes, I go to school every day. But I do not go *on Sunday*[3]. The school *is closed*[4] on Sunday. *In what class*[5] do you read ? I read in *class* V. *How many*[6] boys are there in your class ? There are twenty boys in our class.

1 साढ़े दस बजे 2 प्रति दिन or रोज 3 रविवार or ऐतवार को 4 बन्द रहता है 5 किस दर्जे में (श्रेणी *F*. में) 6 कितने ।

EXERCISE 3.

He has a bad cold[1]. Give him water to drink. See that the water is *warm*[2]. Is this water *very cold*[3] ? Yes, this water is very cold ? Put the water in a *pan*[4]. *Boil*[5] it on the fire. You cannot drink cold water now. You may drink *tea*[6]. Will you eat some food ? Yes, give me some *meat*[7].

1 उसको बहुत सर्दी होगई है or ज़ुकाम होगया है 2 गरम 3 बहुत ठंडा 4 कढ़ाई *F*. 5 उबालो 6 चाय 7 मांस or गोश्त ।

EXERCISE 4.

It is very hot to-day[1]. There are *clouds*[2] in the *sky*[3]. It *will rain*[4] very soon. We shall not go out to play. What will you do then ? I shall read my new book. It is a *story*[5]-book. There are *lovely pictures*[6] in it. I had it from my father. He gave me the book *as a prize*[7].

1 आज बहुत गरमी है 2 बादल 3 आसमान 4 पानी बरसेगा 5 कहानी 6 सुन्दर सुन्दर चित्र (तस्वीरें *f.*) 7 इनाम में ।

EXERCISE 5.

This man is *dumb*[1]. He cannot talk. He is also *deaf*.[2] He cannot hear. That man is *lame*.[3] He cannot walk. That is a *blind*[4] man. He cannot see. We see *by the light of day*.[5] But it is night to him. He cannot read and write. They are all *poor men*.[6] *Be good and kind to them*.[7]

1 गूंगा 2 बहरा 3 लंगड़ा 4 अंधा 5 दिन की रोशनी में 6 गरीब आदमी 7 उन पर दया रखो और उनके साथ अच्छा बर्ताव करो ।

EXERCISE 6.

Why has the man come here? He has come *to sell*[1] fruits. What has he on his head? He has a *basket*[2] on his head. What is in the basket? He has *oranges*,[3] *plantains*,[4] and *grapes*.[5] I shall buy some grapes. Will you buy anything? Yes, I shall buy some oranges. I *hope*[6] he will sell them *cheap*[7]. What is the *price*[8] of your oranges? You may have an orange for a pice. Give me four oranges. Here is an *anna*[10] for the four oranges.

1 बेचने 2 टोकरी *f.* 3 नारंगियां *f.* 4 केले 5 अंगूर 6 समझता हूँ or आशा करता हूँ 7 सस्ता 8 दाम 9 पैसा 10 आना ।

EXERCISE 7.

I have *just*[1] had some *lunch*.[2] What did you have for lunch? *Chapaties*,[3] rice, *curry*,[4] dal, fruits, rice-*pudding*.[5] I *do not like*[6] *meat*.[7] *Neither*[8] do I. With *tea*[9] I like *cakes*[10], *biscuits*,[11] bread and *butter*.[12] But I *love*[13] milk and fruits *best*.[14] So do I. *They make my mouth water*.[15]

1 अभी 2 भोजन 3 चपाती 4 तरकारी 5 खीर 6 नहीं पसंद करता 7 मांस (गोश्त) 8 न 9 चाय 10 केक 11 बिस्कुट 12 मक्खन 13 पसंद करता हूँ 14 अधिक 15 उनको देख कर मेरे मुँह में पानी भर आता है ।

EXERCISE 8.

What a *fine old*[1] tree this is ! I think it must be a hundred years old. How thick the *trunk*[2] is ! How far the branches *spread out*[3] on all sides ! How *pretty*[4] the leaves look ! Now they are *bright*[5] and green. But in a little while they will get yellow and *brown*[6]. Then they will get quite dry and fall on the ground.

1 बढ़िया और पुराना 2 तना 3 फैली हुई हैं 4 सुन्दर 5 चमकदार 6 भूरे ।

EXERCISE 9.

To-day, *let us take a walk*[1] in the bazar. But be *careful*[2] ! there are many people, horses, dogs and cows. What a *crowd*[3] ! How many shops thera are ! Look, John, here is a *sweet-shop*[4]. Let us buy some sweets. I have two pice. Which sweets shall we buy ? No, not these. They are very *heavy*[5] and we shall get *few*[6]. Let us buy those. They are *light*[7], so we shall get many for our pice. Please give us *two pice worth*[8] of these light sweets. Thank you ! Come, we shall eat them under that tree.

1 घूमने चलें 2 सावधान (होशियार) रहना 3 भीड़ 4 मिठाई की दूकान 5 भारी 6 थोड़े 7 हलके 8 दो पैसे की 9 धन्यवाद ।

EXERCISE 10.

This evening we are *running races*[1] The big boys are running from the school to the river. But we small boys cannot run *so far*.[2]

We shall run *only one hundred yards*.[3] That is not very far. But it is far enough for us I love running races Don't you ? My big brother is running in the race. He has *long legs*[4] and can run very fast. I *hope*[5] *he wins a prize*.[6] The *Head master*[7] is giving prizes to the *best runner*[8] in each class. These will be very good prizes.

1 दौड़ों में दौड़ रहे हैं 2 इतनी दूर 3 केवल एक सौ गज़ 4 लम्बी लम्बी टांगें 5 आशा (उम्मीद) करता हूँ 6 उसको इनाम मिलेगा 7 हेडमास्टर (प्रधानाध्यापक) 8 सब से अच्छे दौड़ने वाले को।

EXERCISE 11.

Would you like *to have a swing*[1] ? O, yes. I would. But where is the swing ? There it is on the branch of that tree. Who *put*[2] it there ? I did. How, did you do it ? I climbed the tree and *tied up*[3] the rope to a branch. Can you climb *such a big tree as that*[4] ? O, yes, I can. I can climb like a monkey. Come along. Sit on the swing. I *shall swing*[5] you. *Take care*[6]. I am going to give you a *push*[7] from behind. One two, three, go.

1 झूला झूलना 2 लगाया है 3 बांधी 4 इतने बड़े पेड़ पर 5 झुलाऊँगा 6 होशियार ! 7 धक्का।

EXERCISE 12.

Mary is a *naughty*[1] little girl. She is so *lazy*.[2] She never gets up *early in the morning*[3]. I like to get up early in the morning. The cock crows, the clock *strikes*[4] six, and I wake up.

But mary *never*[5] gets up at six. She gets up at seven. Her mother *often asks*[6] her to get up and get out of bed. But she *stays in bed*[7] *all the time.*[8] So she is *called*[9] lazy Mary. A *song*[10] is written about her. *This is how it goes.*[11]

1 नटखट 2 आलसी 3 भोर में (तड़के) 4 बजाती है 5 कभी नहीं 6 कहा करती है. 7 सोती रहती है 8 सदा 9 कहलाती है (उसका नाम है) 10 गाना 11 यह इस प्रकार है

EXERCISE 13.

Here is a *stream*.[1] It is a small stream. There is a *plank*[2] over it. A dog *was crossing*[3] it by the plank. He had a *piece*[4] of meat in his mouth. He looked into the water. He saw in the water a dog *like himself*[5]. That dog on the plank was a *greedy*[6] dog. He opened his mouth *to bite*[7] the dog in the water. He *wanted*[8] to take his meat. But he did not get it. He *only*[9] *lost*[10] his own meat. It *fell*[11] into the water.

1 नाला 2 तख्ता 3 पार कर रहा था 4 टुकड़ा 5 अपनी तरह का 6 लालची 7 काटने के लिए 8 चाहता था 9 केवल 10 खो दिया 11 गिर पड़ा।

EXERCISE 14.

The *Japanese*[1] are very *clever*[2] and *skilful*[3] people. They live in Japan. Japan is a *beautiful country*[4] with *lovely*[5] flowers, gardens and high hills.

The Japanese are very clever *farmers*[6], *workmen*[7] and *fishermen*[8]. Japan is an *island*[9]. It has the *sea*[10] *all round*[11] it. So the Japanese *live*[12] *mostly*[13] on fish and rice Rice *needs*[14] a lot of water in a *warm*[15] place. The Japanese *grow*[16] much rice in summer and *wheat*[17] in *winter*[18].

1 जापानी 2 चतुर (होशियार) 3 गुणी 4 सुन्दर देश 5 खूबसूरत (सुन्दर) 6 किसान 7 कारीगर 8 मछुए 9 टापू 10 समुद्र 11 चारों ओर 12 जीते हैं (खाते हैं) 13 अधिकतर (ज्यादातर) 14 जरूरत होती है 15 गरम 16 उपजाते हैं 17 गेहूँ 18 जाड़ा।

EXERCISE 15.

(*i*) It is night time. The sun *has set*[1] and its light *does not reach us*[2] but *still*[3] the sky is not *quite dark*[4] because many *stars*[5] have come out. *By reason*[6] of these stars it is somewhat light.

(*ii*) Well, how many of these stars will there be ? Can you *count*[7] them ? No, they are *so numerous*[8] that you cannot count them. Some of them are large and *brilliant*[9] and some are small and less brilliant.

(*iii*) The stars are very far off and *hence*[10] *appear*[11] quite small. Were they not so far off, they would appear to us large and brilliant *as*[12] the sun.

(S. C. 1922)

1 छिप गया है 2 हम तक नहीं पहुँचती 3 अभी 4 बिलकुल काला 5 तारे 6 के कारण 7 गिनना 8 इतने अधिक 9 चमकदार 10 इसलिए 11 दिखाई देते हैं 12 की तरह।

EXERCISE 16.

India is a country of *birds, beasts*[1], *corn*[2] *fruits* and *flowers*[3]. We can see *all kinds*[4] of animals in the *Zoo*[5]. Parrots are lovely birds. They are of *all colours*[6], but *most of them*[7] are green. Some of them have *reddish feathers*[8] at the top. Their beak is *curved*[9] or hooked. It is very *strong.*[10] It *hurts*[11] us very much when a parrot bites us. Parrots like grain, gram, pears, and other fruits. They can fly very fast. If they hear the same words again and again, they can repeat them too.

1 पशु पक्षियों 2 अन्न 3 फल-फूलों 4 सब तरह के 5 चिड़ियाघर 6 सब रंग के होते हैं 7 अधिकतर 8 कुछ लाल लाल पंख 9 टेढ़ी 10 मजबूत 11 दुःख होता है।

EXERCISE 17.

On becoming rich[1] he left his village and went to live in *Allahabad.*[2] He *obtained*[3] a large house and began to live *in great style*[4]. His *wife*[5] and his two sons and *their wives*[6] and his little daughter lived with him. He had many servants, a *carriage*[7] and a *pair of horses.*[8] But three months had not *elapsed*[9] before he *fell very ill.*[10]

(J. C. 1929)

1 धनी होने पर 2 इलाहाबाद 3 लेलिया 4 बड़े ठाट-बाट से 5 स्त्री 6 पुतोहुएँ (लड़कों की पत्नियां) 7 गाड़ी 8 घोड़ों की जोड़ी 9 बीते थे 10 बहुत बीमार पड़ा ।

EXERCISE 18.

(*a*) Early in the morning *Akbar*[1] and his son with *Birbal*[2], went *hunting*[3], when the sun *arose*[4], Akbar gave Birbal his *cloak*[5] to carry. The *prince*[6] did *likewise*[7]. Then Akbar said; "you have a donkey's *load*[8]." Birbal replied, "No, a two donkey's load.

(J. C. 1933.)

(*a*) 1 अकबर 2 बीरबल 3 शिकार खेलने 4 निकला 5 अंगरखा 6 शाहज़ादे ने 7 ऐसा ही 8 बोझा।

EXERCISE 19.

Once there was a cock. It was an *old bird*[1] and could not see well. And there was a cat which wanted to eat it. One day the cat went to it, and said, 'How you *crow and crow*[2] every night ! Why, I cannot sleep ? I will *kill you.*[3] But the cock said, 'I never crow at night. I crow early in the morning. Then every one *should get up*[4]'. 'Come, come,' said the cat. 'I cannot talk *any more*[5]. I want my food, and cats *do not live upon words*[6]'. And it killed the cock.

Matric 1939.

1 बूढ़ा पक्षी 2 बांग देना (मुर्गे का बोलना) 3 मार डालूंगा 4 उठ जाना चाहिए 5 अधिक or ज्यादा 6 बातों से पेट नहीं भरता।

EXERCISE 20.

One evening, *as*[1] little *Prince*[2] Rama was in his *mother's arms*[3], the *moon rose in the East*[4].

She looked very bright, and Rama *put out*[5] his little hands for her. But she was far, far away, and Rama could not get her. So he began to cry. He cried and he cried. 'My son,' said his mother, 'the moon is very far away. Here are some *pretty things*[6]. Play with them.' But Rama would not look at them, and *still cried*[7] for the moon.

Matric 1938.

1 जब 2 राजकुमार 3 मां की गोद में 4 पूर्व में चांद निकला 5 बढ़ाये 6 बढ़िया बढ़िया चीजें 7 रोता रहा।

EXERCISE 21.

We cannot see *God*[1], but He sees us. He knows all that we do. He *takes care*[2] of us. He *is kind*[3] to every thing that he has made. We should try *to please*[4] him. We should not *lie*[5] or steal, or do *anything else*[6] that He *hates*.[7]

How good God is to me ! I must love Him and *praise*[8] Him. I will *pray*[9] to Him to keep me from all *sin*[10]. Then I shall be happy and good.

1 ईश्वर 2 रक्षा करता है 3 दया रखता है 4 प्रसन्न रखने or खुश करने 5 झूठ बोलना 6 और कोई काम 7 घृणा (नफ़रत) करता है 8 प्रशंसा 9 प्रार्थना करूंगा 10 पाप।

EXERCISE 22

The *earth*[1] goes round the sun once in a year. This *motion*[2] causes the *seasons*.[3] In summer we see the sun overhead. The heat is very great now. People *can hardly work*[4] in the field at noon. *Tanks*[5] and wells dry up, and people cannot get drinking water easily. But mangoes and *jack-fruits*[6] ripen at this time, and we eat them *with great relish*.[7] Matric 1939.

1 पृथिवी 2 गति or चाल 3 ऋतुएं 4 मुश्किल से काम कर सकते हैं 5 तालाब 6 कटहल 7 मज़े से or स्वाद से ।

EXERCISE 23.

One day as Satis was walking down the street, he saw a *gentleman*[1] drop a *bundle of notes*.[2] Satis picked it up and went after the gentleman, who *got into a carriage and drove away*.[3] Satis began to run after the carriage, and *managed to keep it in sight*[4] till it stopped before a large house. Satis came up, and *held out*[5] the bundle of notes before the gentleman.

Matric 1936.

1 भले आदमी को 2 नोटों का पुलिन्दा 3 गाड़ी में बैठ कर चला गया 4 तब तक उस पर दृष्टि रख सका 5 बढ़ा दिया ।

EXERCISE 24.

When I was fourteen I was sent away to a school in a large town *between 40 and 50 miles away.1* I was a poor *friendless2* boy, my parents were both dead, I had no brother and my *only3* sister was married and living far away. I had one *uncle, my mother's brother,4* who was *comparatively wealthy.5* To save himself the *trouble,6* of *looking after7* me he paid for my being sent away to school. In the town to which I went two or three *distant relations8* lived but I saw little of them. They lived a *couple of miles9* away from the school and did not seem *eager10* for me to visit them, so the only friends I had were my *school-fellows.11*

(S. C. 1936)

1 चालीस पचा मीलस दूर 2 असहाय 3 इकलौता 4 मामा 5 कुछ धनी 6 कष्ट 7 देख रेख करने के 8 दूर के नातेदार or रिश्तेदार 9 एक कोस पर 10 उत्सुक 11 सहपाठी

EXERCISE 25

On *the following day1* when Ram Chand got back from school, *he was told2* that Kirpa Ram had sent to say to him that he and some friends *were going3* that night in a boat to catch fish. Would Ram Chand go with them ? He was *invited4*

delighted.5 It was the very thing he had wanted for a long time. He ran off to get food *to take with him,6* and to put on his big coat, and in five minutes he was at the *edge7* of the *lake.8*

1 दूसरे दिन 2 उसको बतलाया गया 3 जायंगे 4 तो 5 खुश था 6 साथ ले जाने के लिए 7 किनारे 8 झोल ।

EXERCISES 26

The village was *somewhat1* small it was not on the *main road2* and was six milie from a *railway station.3* there was no school, no post office. The only *brick building4* was a large house in which the *landlord5* lived; the other residents iived in *mudhouses6* or *sheds7* and were very poor. A few of the people were *Mohammedans8* but most of them were Hindoo or *members of the udtouchable classes.9* There was a tiny *temple,10* old and *broken,11* and a *stone idol12* under a tree just outside the village.

(S. C. 1932)

1 कुछ 2 मुख्य सड़क पर 3 रेल का स्टेशन 4 ईंट का पक्का मकान 5 ज़मींदार 6 मिट्टी के कच्चे घर 7 झोंपड़े 8 मुसलमान 9 अछूत जाति के लाग 10 मन्दिर 11 टूटा-फूटा 12 पत्थर की मूर्ति ।

EXERCISE 27.

The *disease1* spread *in all directions.2* There was not a village for miles *round,3* where some people had not died and *scarcely4* a house where some were not lying ill. In Bijpur thirty or forty had died and all the people *were terribly frightened.5* Many had shut up their houses and fled *to relatives6* in distant villages. A *retired doctor7* had his house in Bijpur but *as soon as8* the illness became bad he had gone off to Calcutta *with his wife and children9*

1 बीमारी 2 चारों ओर 3 आसपास 4 शायद ही 5 बहुत डरे हुए थे 6 रिशतेदारों के पास or संबंधियों के पास. 7 पेंशनयाफ्ता डाक्टर 8 ज्योंही (will be followed by त्योंही 9 बाल बच्चों के साथ ।

EXERCISE 28

The voice *belonged to a cripple1* both of whose legs were *useless.2* The blind man went to words it and the cripple said, "Brother, I am a cripple and can not walk, and you are blind and cannot see where you are going Come let us help *each other.3* Do you lift me up and *set4* me on your *shoulders.5* Then as you go along, I shall be *able to direct6* you on your way. *In this manner,7 both of our lives8* will be saved." The blind man *agreed9*

to this. He seated the cripple on his shouldiers, and in the way they got *safely10* out cf the village

(S. C. 1928)

1 लंगड़े की थी 2 बेकाम के 3 एक दूसरे को 4 बैठा लो 5 कंधों पर 6 बता सकूंगा 7 इस प्रकार 8 हम दोनों के प्राण 9 बात मान गया 10 सुरक्षित।

EXERCISES 29

A hungry little hen *was scratching1* among the *rubbish2* by the road side. when suddenly found a *glittering diamond.3* She said, 'Of *what use4* is this stone to me? A *grain5* of rice or *barley6* is what I am in need of, and that I cannot find anywhere, and I am *even now7* dying of huuger. Diamonds may please pretty, womemee, dut for us dirds nothing is better is than corn.

(J. C. 1937)

1 खुरच रही थी 2 कूड़े को 3 चमकदार हीरा 4 किस काम का 5 दाना 6 जौ 7 अब भी।

EXERCISE 30

A boy was *shouting1* in a street of *Delhi,2* "Orange." A man said to him, Here in Delhi we should say 'Oranges'. The boy showed his basket in which was one only one orange, and said,

"How can I say 'Oranges,' when *I have but one left?*"3 (J.C. 1937)

1 चिल्ला रहा था 2 देहली (दिल्ली) 3 मेरे पास केवल एक ही बचा है।

EXERCISE 31.

After this, *evanandan1* stayed there seven days. He *had* two rooms and a verandah of that house *repaired2*, he brought *provisions3* for a whole year, he bought six *dresses4* and gave them to *Devbala.5 In the meantime,6* the boy also got quite well again. Therefor on the eighth day he said "I am going now, but will return *as soon as possible.*"7

He *set out8* at four o'clock, *entered9* the carriage at half-past four, *conversed10* with his friends till a quarter-past six, and arrived at a quarter to seven. His brother *was expecting11* him.

(J. C. 1930)

1 देवनन्दन 2 मरम्मत करवाई थी 3 रसद 4 कपड़े 5 देवाला 6 इसीबीच में 7 जितनी जल्दी हो सकेगा 8 चला 9 बैठा था 10 बात चीत करता रहा 11 रास्ता देख रहा था।

EXERCISE 32

The *great queen1* got dow from the boat. On the bank she had to cross a wet and *muddy2* place. As she did not wish *to soil3* her shoes, she stood *still.4* A *youngman5* was standing near, who took off his fine *clock6* and laid it on the muddy place, so that the queen walked over *dryshod.7* The queen *rewarded8* the young man, by giving him *employment9* and a place in her *court.10*

(J. C. 1932)

1 महारानी 2 कीचड़ वाले 3 मैले करना 4 चुपचाप 5 नव युवक (नौजवान) 6 अंगरखा 7 बिना पैर भिगोये (सूखे पैर) 8 इनाम दिया 9 नौकरी 10 दरबार।

EXERCISE 33

Through gambling1 Nal had to go into *exile,2* and *poor Damayanti3* had to wander in the jungle with him. It was on account of gambling that *Yudhisthir4 was expelled5* from his kingdom and *Draupadi6* was *taunted7* and *treated8* as a slave-girl.

(J, C, 1932)

1 जुए के कारण 2 बनमें 3 बेचारी दमयन्ती को 4 युधिष्ठिर 5 निकाला गया (छोड़ना पड़ा) 6 द्रौपदी 7 अपमान हुआ 8 व्यवहार किया गया।

EXERCISE 34

My dear fellow,1 don't *waste2* your time and your money in travelling twenty miles to try and see him. He was only to stay with his brother for two or three days and must have gone home after this. All that you wish to say to him you can *equally well say3* in a letter ; and there is this *advantage4* in a letter, that what he says in *reply,5* you will have in writing and he cannot so well *back out6* of anything that he promises.

(S. C. 1936)

1 मेरे प्यारे मित्र 2 नष्ट करो 3 अच्छी तरह लिख सकते हो 4 लाभ (फायदा) 5 जवाब (उत्तर) 6 पीछे हट सकता ।

EXERCISE 35

(*a*) Once there was a man who had *many sheep.1* Every day a little boy took them to a hill *to feed.2* They liked to the grass *that grew there.3* They stayed all day on the hill. and the boy *looked after4* them. Down the hill there was a garden. Some men worked there.

(*b*) There was a washerman at Benares who had an ass and a dog in his *court5 loose 6* Once upon a time, when he was sleeping in his room, a thief came into his house, and began to carry off his

goods. The ass saw what the thief was doing and wanted to wake up his master.

(Matric 1937)

(a) 1 बहुत सी भेड़ें 2 चराने को 3 बढ़ी हुई 4 देख रेख कर रहा था।

(b) 5 हाते में 6 खुला हुआ था।

EXERCISE 36

He had two sons who were so *different1* from one another in *character2* that one would never have *supposed3* they were brothers and had grown up in the same hom. One was very *industrious4;* in fact he was newer hapoy unless he was working. The other was *exteremely lazy5* and used to run away at the *mere mention6* of work. One brother was *absolutely truthful7*, the other seemed as though he could not tell truth even if he tried. Both the father and the mother were hard working and *honest8* people, so that it was *difficult to understand9* how a child of theirs could be so lazy and untruthful.

(J. C. 1938)

1 जुदा or पृथक 2 स्वभाव or चाल चलन 3 जान सकता था 4 मेहनती or परिश्रमी 5 एक दम आलसी 6 नाम लेते ही 7 बिलकुल सच्चा 8 ईमानदार 9 यह जानना कठिन था।

EXERCISE 37.

Some *wicked men1* came *together2* to kill the king when the queen heard that they were trying to enter the room, she *gave orders3* that the door *should be barred4*. One of her maids ran to put the *bar5* in its place, but she found that it had been removed. Knowing that if she *could deley6* the *murderers,7* the king could be hidden away this brave maiden *thrust her arm8* in place of the bar. *Not till9* her arm was broken were they able to open the door, and by this time the king was hidden.

(J. C. 1934)

1 बदमाश 2 एक साथ 3 आज्ञा दी 4 भीतर से बन्द कर दिया जाय 5 डंडा or किल्ली 6 रोक रखे 7 हत्यारों को 8 अपनी बांह डाल दी 9 जबतक (will be followed by तब तक)।

EXERCISE 38.

In the *midst of a millet-field1* there was a *platform,2* consisting of a bedstead *supported one3* four bamboos one at each corner. Seated on this, women and children used to *scare away4* the birds, by shouting and *clapping bits of wood5* together. One day a woman had left her baby sleeping in a basket on the platform while she went below to fetch some water.

The baby woke up and began to cry, at once the mother returned and climbed up on the platform, there wase no *ladder,6* but placing her *bare feets7* on the *knots8* in the bamboo, she was up *in a moment9.*

1 ज्वार के खेत के बीच में 2 मचान 3 खड़ा था 4 उड़ाया करते थे 5 लकड़ी बजा बजा कर 6 सीढ़ी 7 नंगे पैर 8 गांठों पर 9 फ़ौरन (उसी समय)

EXERCISE 39

While Panna was thinking thus *all of a sudden1* she heard the *sound of footstep2* Under standing that it must be Banbir *himself3* who was coming. Panna *hardened her heart.4* and taking up Udai Singh, she hid him away in a corner, and laid her own little boy in his place *thereupon5* came Banbir with a *naked sword.6* in his hand, and asked Panna, "where is Udai Singh? Tell me." *Choking with fear7* she could not speak. All that she could do was to *lift her finger and point8* to her babe. Immediately Banbir killed him with one stoke of his sword.

(J. C. 1936)

1 अचानक 2 पैरों की आवाज़ 3 स्वयं (खुद) 4 जी कड़ा करके 5 तब 6 नंगी तलवार 7 डरके मारे 8 अंगुली से इशारा किया ।

EXERCISE 40.

At last it was decided that the king should send *one of his generals1* to the enemy's *camp2* to *discus terms of peace.3* The man chosen for this purpose had already *had considerable experience4* in *negotiations of this sort.5* If that had not been the case the king would never have agreed to trust hime with *so responsible a task 6 Even as it was7* he was given *strict instructions8* not to agree to the *surrender9* of any of his country's *territory 10* If such thing was suggested, he was to refuse even to discuss it. This was *made quite clear11* to him in the *interview12* he had with the king immediately before setting out on his difficult mission.

(J. C. 1938)

1 एक सेनापति को 2 डेरे में 3 संधि की शर्तें तय करने के लिए 4 काफी अनुभव था 5 इस तरह की बातचीत का 6 ऐसी ज़िम्मेदारी का काम 7 फिर भी 8 सख्त हिदायत 9 देने के लिये 10 भाग or हिस्से के 11 साफ साफ कह दिया गया था 12 मुलाकात।



EXERCISE 41.

The time went quickly while they were talking about these things and after an hour or two they came to the place. There was only *a small number1* of houses, but the land was *fertile2* The men living there *chiefly3 keepers of sheep4,* and in *the eyes of5* the farmers they were not *badly off.6* The older man was the *headman7* of the place In front of his house were *ten to twelve8* cows and buffaloes having a meal of dry grass. On a *hook9* was hanging *a drum10* and on a *shelf11* were some books *rolled up in a cloth12* to keep them from the dust. No doubt they were his books *of religion13*

(J. C. 1939

1 कुछ 2 उपजाऊ 3 अधिकांश 4 गड़रिये 5 दृष्टि में or समझ में 6 गरीब 7 चौधरी 8 दस, बारह 9 खूंटी पर 10 ढोल 11 आलमारी में 12 बंधी हुई, or बस्ते में 13 धार्मिक ।

PART IV.

COMPOSITION.

"*Reading maketh a full man, conference a ready,*
and writing an exact man."

—*Bacon*

LETTER-WRITING

AND

ESSAY-WRITING.



LETTER-WRITING

Sample Letters

To One's Father (पिता जी को)

हार्ट काटेज,
कालिम्पौङ्ग
८ अप्रैल, सन् १९३९,

श्रीमान् पिता जी !

सादर प्रणाम ! हम सब यहाँ कुशल से हैं और आशा है आप भी प्रसन्न होंगे।

जिनको कल बुखार आ गया था, वह अस्पताल में है। आज वह बिल्कुल अच्छा है। आप चिन्ता न करें। जोन अच्छी है और मन लगाकर पढ़ रही है।

डेढ़ महीने बाद हम लोगों की छुट्टी होगी। छुट्टी केवल दो हफ्ते की है, इसलिए हम घर जाने न पावेंगे। क्या आप छुट्टी में यहाँ आयेंगे ? माता जी को भी साथ लाइयेगा ? हमें आप लोगों से मिलकर बड़ी ख़ुशी होगी।

आपका प्रिय (प्यारा) पुत्र,
एड्वर्ड,

2 To A Friend.

२. मित्र को

१५ कैनिंग स्ट्रीट,
आगरा ।
१५-२-३६

प्रिय पैट्रिक !

तुम्हारी चिट्ठी मिली । धन्यवाद ।

मुझे खुशी है मेरा स्कूल भी २५ नवम्बर को बन्द हो रहा है । मैं २० तारीख तक तुम्हारे पास पहुंच सकूंगा । वह कैसा अच्छा दिन होगा जब हम फिर एक बार मिलेंगे और साथ साथ बम्बई की सैर करेंगे ।

मेरी परीक्षा हो गई है । आशा है मैं पास हो जाऊंगा । अपनी माता जी को मेरा प्रणाम कहना और लिली को प्यार ।

तुम्हारा प्यारा मित्र,
डेविड.

3. To A Book-seller.

३. पुस्तक-बेचने वाले को

सेंट ए० सी० होम्स
कोलिम्पोङ्ग
२ दिसम्बर १९३८

सेवा में,
मैनेजर,
सारदा मंदिर लिमिटेड देहली ।

प्रिय महाशय !

आपका भेजा हुआ पासल मिला । धन्यवाद ।

मैंने आपका पासल लेलिया है । मुझे दुःख से लिखना पड़ता है कि उसमें दो किताबें भीतर से फटी हुई हैं मैं उन्हें एक अलग पैकट में वापिस

भेज रहा हूँ। आशा है आप उनके बदले दूसरी किताबें भेजने की कृपा करेंगे।

आप का—

फ्रेड जान्सन।

Letters

How to begin and end letters.

	Beginning	End
To Superior	श्रीमान पूज्य पिता जी	आपका प्यारा पुत्र
	My dear father	Your loving son
	श्रीमान् मान्यवर भाई साहब	आपका आज्ञाकारी भाई
	My dear brother	Your loving brother
To Epuals	मेरे प्यारे विलियम	तुम्हारा
	My dear William	Yours Sincerely
	प्यारे मित्र	तुम्हारा मित्र
	My dear friend	Your Sincerely
In a Business letter	प्रिय महाशय	आपका
	Dear Sir,	Yours faithfully



ESSAY WRITING.

घोड़ा A Horse

घोड़ा बड़ा खूबसूरत जानवर है। यह सब को अच्छा लगता है। इसकी गर्दन पर लम्बे लम्बे बाल होते हैं। घोड़े की दुम के बाल लम्बे होते हैं। उससे वह मक्खियाँ उड़ाता है घोड़े की टाँगें बड़ी मजबूत होती हैं।

घोड़ा आदमी के बहुत काम आता है। कोई घोड़ा सवारी के काम में आता है, कोई गाड़ी में जोता जाता है। कहीं कहीं घोड़े से हल भी जोतते हैं।

घोड़े कई रंग के होते हैं। कोई लाल, कोई काला, कोई सफेद और कोई चितकबरा होता है।

कुछ घोड़े ऊंचे कद के होते हैं और कुछ छोटे कद के। छोटे घोड़ों को टट्टू कहते हैं। ये पहाड़ों पर ज्यादा काम देते हैं, टट्टुओं पर लोग बोझा भी लादते हैं।

घोड़े का मुँह लम्बा आँखें बड़ी बड़ी और कान छोटे होते हैं। इसके पैरों को टाप कहते हैं। घोड़े की टापों में लोहे की नाल जड़ दी जाती है।

घोड़ा दाना, घास और भूसा खाता है। यह बड़ा ईमानदार जानवर है। अपने मालिक को खूब पहचानता है और उस के लिये अपनी जान तक दे देता है।

GURU NANAK

The founder of the S.kh Religion)

गुरु नानक जी ने सिक्ख धर्म को चलाया है। यह लाहौर के पास एक गांव में पैदा हुए थे। इन के बाप जाति के खत्री थे और सौदागरी करते थे।

नानक जी बचपन से ही बड़े समझदार थे। यह हर काम को खूब सोच समझकर करते थे। जब बड़े हुए तो इनका जी किसी काम में न लगता था। इनको जो कुछ मिलता था सब गरीबों को बाँट देते थे।

जब यह बत्तीस साल के हुए तो इन्होंने घर छोड़ दिया और फकीर हो गये। तब से देशभर में घूम-घूम कर लोगों को उपदेश देने लगे। जो लोग इनकी बातों को सुनते थे, इनके चेले हो जाते थे।

यह कहते थे सबका ईश्वर एक ही है। हमको उसी ईश्वर की पूजा करनी चाहिए। वह हमारे सब कामों को देखता है। जो जैसा काम करेगा वैसा ही फल पावेगा!

A HOUSE ON FIRE

मकान में आग लगना

मैं बाजार जा रहा था। थोड़ी देर बाद मैंने देखा कि आसमान लाल हो रहा है। आग की लपटें उठ रही हैं। बाजार में बहुत से लोग एक तरह भागे जा रहे थे। मैं भी उधर ही भागा।

थोड़ी दूर पर एक मकान में आग लगी हुई थी। मकान बड़ा था। उसकी तीन मंजिलें थीं। उसके दरवाजे, उसकी छत टूट-टूट कर नीचे गिर रही थीं। आग बुझानेवाला इंजिन भी आ गया था बहुत से आदमी आग बुझा रहे थे। लेकिन वह तो तेज होती जा रही थी।

तीन आदमी ऊपर की छतपर खड़े थे। एक बच्चा भी था। वे चिल्ला रहे थे -"बचाओ, बचाओ"। एक स्काउट ने बड़ी हिम्मत की। एक लम्बी सीढ़ी रखकर वह छत पर चढ़ गया और उन्हें उतार लाया। उसके कपड़े भी थोड़े थोड़े जल गये। चार घण्टे तक मकान जलता रहा। फिर जाकर आग बुझी।

LUCKNOW

लखनऊ

लखनऊ का पुराना नाम लक्ष्मणपुर है। कहते हैं इसे राम के भाई लक्ष्मण ने बसाया था। बहुत दिनों तक वह अवध के नवाबों की राजधानी थी। आज कलयह संयुक्त प्रान्त (United Provinces) की राजधानी है।

यह एक बड़ा सुन्दर नगर है। इसके बीचों बीच गोमती नदी बहती है। थोड़ी थोड़ी दूर पर पार्क बने हुए हैं इसी से इसको बगीचों का नगर (City of gardens) कहते हैं।

मुसलमान बादशाह की बनवाई हुई बहुतसी पुरानी इमारतें यहाँ हैं इनमें इमामबाड़ा बहुत मशहूर है। नए मकानों में

कौंसिल भवन और रेलवे स्टेशन देखने लायक हैं। यहाँ एक अजायबघर (Museum) और एक चिड़िया घर (Zoo) भी है।

यहाँ एक विश्व विद्यालय (University) है और मेडिकल कालिज भी है। बहुत से अस्पताल भी हैं। यहाँ तीन मुख्य बाजार हैं। अँग्रेजों का हजरातगंज और हिन्दुस्तानियों के चोक और अमीनाबाद। शाम को अमीनाबाद में बड़ी भीड़ हो जाती है।

यहाँ के लोग पतंग उड़ाने के बहुत शौकीन हैं। यहाँ मिट्टी के खिलौने बड़े सुन्दर बनाते हैं और खरबूजे बहुत मीठे होते हैं।

THE ADVANTAGES OF LEARNING HINDI.

हिन्दी पढ़ने के लाभ

हिन्दी हिन्दुस्तान की मुख्य भाषा है। यों तो हिन्दुस्तान एक बहुत बड़ा देश है और पचासों भाषायें यहां बोली जाती हैं। पर हिन्दी एक ऐसी भाषा है जिसे यहाँ के ज्यादातर लोग समझते हैं। इसलिए इस देश में रहने वाले हर एक वयक्ति को हिन्दी जाननी चाहिए। हिन्दी पढ़कर वह सबकी बात को अच्छी तरह समझ सकता है और अपनी बात सबको समझा सकता है।

जब से हिन्दुस्तानियों के हाथ में बहुत से अधिकार आए हैं उन्होंने हिन्दी को पढ़ना जरूरी ठहरा दिया है। जब तक हिन्दी न जानें तब तक सरकारी नहीं मिलती। बड़े बड़े अफसरों को भी यह भाषा सीखनी पड़ती है। बिना लोगों की बोली जाने वे उनसे कैसे बात कर सकते हैं?

अंग्रेज लड़के लड़कियों के लिये तो यह बहुत ही ज़रूरी है। कारखानों में काम मिलने पर वे अपने साथियों से कैसे बात करेंगे? यहाँ के अधिकतर तो लोग अंग्रेज़ी नहीं जानते। बहुत सी लड़कियाँ अस्पताल में नर्स का काम करती हैं। उन्हें हिन्दुस्तानी बीमारों के साथ रात दिन काम पड़ता है। बड़े बड़े साहबों को भी अपने नौकरों से हिन्दी में बात करनी पड़ती है।

इसलिए हिन्दुस्तान में रहने वाले प्रत्येक स्त्री-पुरुष के लिए हिन्दी का जानना उतना ही ज़रूरी है, जितना किसी हिन्दुस्तानी को विलायत जाने पर अंग्रेजी का जानना



SUBJECTS FOR ESSAYS.

1. A description of the town or village where you live. (S. C. 1935)
2. What would you like to do when you leave school ? (S. C 1935)
3. Write adout different ways of travelling, rail etc. (S. C. 1935)
4. The Viceroy of India—his responsibilities etc. (S. C. 1936)
5. Recreation—games—indoors and outdoors.
6. Kindness to animals. (S. C. 1936)
7. A faithful dog. (S. C. 1937)
4 Learning a swim. (S. C. 1937)
9. Summer. (S. C. 1937)
10. Honesty in business. (S. C. 1938)
11. A Motor Car. (S. C. 1938)



PART V.



TEST QUESTIONS



"History repeats itself, examiners repeat one another."

TEST QUESTIONS

For School Certificte

1. Frame sentences to illustrate the use o any four of the following:—

आंख खुलना, आंखें दिखाना, आदमी बनना, आपे से बाहर होना, उंगली पर नचाना, जूं न रेंगना।

2. (a) Give the opposite genders of any six of the following.—

बहन, नतनी, युवा अहीर, लोहार, सिंह, हाथी, भेड़, गाय, बछिया।

(b) Form abstract nouns from any five of the following:—

चढ़ना, सजाना, समझना, चिल्लाना, ढीठ, बूढ़ा, गुरू।

3. Correct the following:—

(a) वह दही बहुत खट्टी है।

(b) तुम अब जाने सकता है।

(c) मैंने बोला था कि वहां न जा।

(d) तुम अपना किताब उठा ले।

(e) अच्छा आदमी को सब लोग चाहता है।

4. Frame sentences to illustrate the use of any four of the folloing:—

आंख मूंदना, आंखें फेर लेना, अच्छे दिन आना, कान देना, गरम होना, जी जलना।

5. (a) Form adjectives from the following and use them in short sentences:—रंग, हवा, चाल, हिलना, पानी।

(b) Give the opposite genders of any four of the following:—

छात्र, सास, कुत्ता, मोर, भैंस, माली, पागल, सखी।

6. Correct the following:—

(a) हम कहे थे तू मत जाओ।

(b) मैंने उसको पढ़ने का वास्ते बोला।

(c) हमारे से यह काम नहीं होने सकता।

(d) कल खूब पानी बरसती थी।

(e) अपना लड़का को अच्छा तरह समझाओ

7. Frame short sentences to illustrate the use and signification of repeteation of adjectives.

8. (a) Give the opposite genders to any five of the following:—भाई, गाय. भैंस, सिंह, धोबी, पण्डित, सास, वधू, देव, चूहा ।

(b) Correct the followfng:—

यह दही अच्छी नहीं है । मैंने उसको घर जाने का वास्ते बोला । हम आफिस जाता है । लड़की भात खाने मांगता है । उसको नौकर घर भाग गया । लड़का लोग फुटबाल खेलता है ।

9. (a) Give two ezamples of the objective case which cannot be used without को ।

(b) Write sentences to illustrate the use of (i) the सप्तमी विभक्ति in the sense of निर्धारण, (ii) the षष्ठी विभक्ति in the sense of परिमाण, and (iii) the पञ्चमी विभक्ति in the sense of सम्बन्ध ।

(c) Re-write the following correctly :—

राम रावण को मारे । कृष्ण ने द्वारका गये । तुम तुम्हारा काम करो । मैं जाते जाते गिर पड़े । वह आदमी को बुलाओ । घड़ी सात बजी है । अच्छी घी नहीं मिलती है । पांच लड़का आया है । वह रोते रोते मर गयी । हवा से कागज उड़ गया ।

10. To illustrate the use of (a) the tenses of verb, (b) the cases, gender and number of nouus and proncuns, (c) the postpositions, translate the following sentences into Hindi:

(a) They gave flowers to all who were presen

(b) Having made the boxes the women placed them on the table.

(c) Their sons and daughters were taking the boxes and placing them near the wall

(d) Give the each of the boys two rupees and each of the girl one.

(e) Two of them live in this house, two in that, the others sleep under the trees.

(f) They all sleep in their own houses but go together every day to the river to bathe.

(g) Will your honour naw bathe and when your honour returns I will give your honour your food.

(h) The king taking the prime-minister with him went to the city.

(i) The prime-minister's house is some distance from the city but very near the river.

(j) Going along together the men and their wives and families came to the river and stayed there.

11. Translste the followiug sentences into English:

(a) वह नित खेला करता है ।

(b) स्त्रियाँ जाने लगीं ।

(c) जब बोलने लगे, तब भाग निकले ।

(d) रेल गाड़ी आना चाहती है ।

(e) लड़की कब आने वाली है ।

(f) कभी कभी वह करने को तैयार होता है, कभी कभी वह हट जाता है ।

12. Correct the mistakes in the followiug passage:

तीन लड़की ने अपनी घर को देखीं और भीतर जा बैठे जब उनके दोनों भाई सुने कि अपने तीन बहिन आईं तो उन्हों

ने कहने लगा कि जब तक हम लौटें तुम यहाँ रहो हम राजों के पास जाकर उनको कहेंगे कि हमारा साथ आना देखो।

13 To illustrate the various parts of the verb give the Hindi for :—

(a) They saw the three women coming towords them.

(b) The three men were quarrelling among themselves as they came along.

(c) They must have come yesterday or the day before.

(d) Come with me, Sir. I will show you how they build houses in our village.

(e) I neither came nor will came, by coming what can I do? Before Ramdas and his brother came to you, all who you came had gone away without doing any good.

(f) The boys who went obtained a book, had they not gone they would not have obtained anything.

14. Give an exact translation of the folloing sentences :—

(a) वे चलते चलते थके हुए पहुँचे।

(b) क्या! तुम उसे मार डालना चाहते हो।

(c) वह लड़का मरना चाहता है।

(d) तुम्हें भागना चाहिए नहीं तो पकड़े जाओगे।

15. Give the Hindi for the words in italics only.

(a) They and these girls and you and I will do it.

(b) Two of them live in their own (houses).

(c) O King, graciously listen to my story.

16 Write four sentences in Hindi to illustrate the various uses of the Infinitive.

17. Give in words and figures the Hindi for the following:—

79, 96. 175, 2½ seers, Rs1. 8. 0., 7¼ annas.

18. Write five sentences in Hindi to illustrate the use of the following postpositions:—

समेत, बिना, समान, सांती, और, योग्य।

And six more to illustratt the following adverbs :-

योंही, पीछे, कचरा, साक्षात, काहे को, निःसन्देह ।

29. Translate the following sentences into idiomatic Hindi :—

(a) I do not need any .

(b) He owns three houses in the city.

(c) They were very tired after travelling such a distance.

(d) If it be necessary ask for it.

(e) You may do what you may but you will not obtain the book.

(f) Yes, he talks but he's not the man to do anything.

30. Give general rules for the determination of the gender of nouns in Hindi.

31 To illustrate the use of the various tenses etc. of the verb give the Hindi for the following sentences :—

(a) Should he go, I will tell you.

(b) Before he went he said to me.

(c) He must have gone by now.

(d) Had he not gone, we might have obtained hsi advice

(e) He told me he was going out of the house.

(f) They are on the point of going into the town

22. Give the nearest equivalents possible to the following sentences using the Passive instead of the active form of the verb:—

(a) बतलाते हैं कि पंजाब उनकी जन्म भूमि है।

(b) चारों ओर इन दो बातों को सुनायेंगे।

(c) राजा के पास पुस्तक को भेज दिया।

(d) कथा दो दो पैसे पर यह बेच डालेंगे।

(e) यदि उसने ऐसा न बतलाया होता।

23. To illustrate the use of adverbs translate the following into Hindi:—

(a) What he said yesterday, he says to day. will say tomorrow and always.

(b) He does his work quickly and exceedingly well.

(c) He greatly exaggerates the number of the sick and dying

(b) He stood firmly, fought dravely and died like a hero.

24. Translate the folloing sentences into idiomatic Hindi using as few words as possible:—

(a) However many they may be let no one escape.

(b) Had they been present they would have been able to understand.

(c) They must have come at night while we were all asleep, stolen our goods and fled in the dark.

(d) God is everywhere, sees everything, hears everything and knows everything, nothing is concealed from him.

25. Give a free idiomatic translation, in English of the following sentences:—

[a] जो हो मैं अवश्य जा कर और हे मारपीट कर के उसको लाऊँगा।

[b] एक साठ और एक तीन बीस।

[c] बीड़ा उठाकर वह जाने को प्रस्तुत हुआ।

[d] मन ही मन जलता आ वह क्रोध छिपाकर चुप रहा

26. To illustrate the use of Verbs and Adverbs translate into Hindi the following sentences.

(a) Had he not spoken so angrily the quarrel would not have taken place.

(b) Advancing very slowly anb very quietly, in the darkness they escaped unnoticed.

(c) Don't stand there so silent, speak up anp let us know what you really think,

(d) You go ahead. the rest will follow; one at a time, as opportunities arise.

(e) If they had come yesterday there would have been no disffculty, we could have gone all together to-day

27. To illustrate the use of causative verbs translate the following sentences into Hindi:—

(a) I have hidden the book, you must get the other things hidden.

(b) I will send the Pundit. You must tell Ramdas to have the two disciples sent along. and that as soon as possible.

(c) Either you must make it yourself, get your brother to make it, or have it made by somobody else. Made it must be in three days or less,

28. Give an English translation of the following words and phrases and sentences :—

[a] एकाएक ।

[b] दो दो तीन तीन करके बांट दिया ।

[c] पुनर्विवाह ।

[d] पहाड़ी उतार-चढ़ाव ।

[e] भाँति भाँति की चिड़िया ।

[f] भाइयों में परस्पर बड़ा ही स्नेह था ।

[g] सम्मान अपमान ।

29. Write 12 Hindi words in which the Prefixes : अ, निर् [or निस्], बे, सु, दुर्, महा and Suffixes पन, क, वाला, ई, ता, वान are found.

30. Translate the following sentences into Hindi:-

(a) They (fem.) had gone into the city.

(b) Had he known he would not have sent the letter.

(c) Should he come he will take his meals with the rest

(d) She gave ner brothers the books and let them go.

(e) He told them again and again not to say a word to anyone.

(f I do not know whether it is better to, speak or to remain silent.

(g) They are coming anb going the whoe day

31. Give the very close translation of the following sentences into English :

(a) आगे बढ़कर वह रानी के सामने खड़ा होकर नगर के वासियों की दुर्दशा का वर्णन करते करते रोने लगा

(b) यदि कल वे आये होते तो अच्छा होता पर अब वे चाहे आवें या न आवें काम तो नहीं बनेगा।

32. Give idiomatc sentences in Hindi for the following :—

(a) He,s no good at all.

(b) You may do what you like but he won,t speak a single word.

(c) Happiness and trouble, wealth and poverty health and sickness life and death.

33. Give the Hindi for .--

(a) I will come tomorrow.

(b) I may come tomorrow,

(c) Shall I come tomorrow.

(d) He gave him two books yesterday.

(e) They had left before he arrived.

34. (a) Give the rules for the use of चुका ।

(b) Illustrate the chief meanings of मिलना ।

(c) what is the meaning of बंधा, बाँधा, बंधाया, बंधवाया ।

35. नारायण ने कहा—हाँ अभी कोई २० मिनट हुए, वह इधर गया है ।

(a) Mark the word कोई in the above sentence. When does कोई inflect and when is it indeclinable. When it is indeclinabe, what does it mean ?

(b) What is the gender of शंका and पेड़ ? What is the general rule deciding the gender of Hindj nouns ending in a ?

36. Translate into Hini.

(i) Whatever you do, don't touch that,

(ii) He was very angry at what I said to him

(iii) The men in the boat were nearly drowned.

TEST QUESTIONS

FOR JUNIOR CAMBRIDGE

1. (a) Give in figures and writing the Hindi of
26, 47, 83.
(b) How would you write in idiomatic Hindi (do not use figures) the following:—
175 men. 250 women. Rs. 1-4-0.

2. To illustrate the use of the Infinative Mood Give the Hindi of.—
(a) First work then play.
(b) It is better to work than to play.
(c) It is necessary to work.
(d) It is good to work.
(e) He begain to work.
(f) The boy wants to play.

3. To illustrat the use of the various tenses give the Hindi of:--

(a) I will not go there.

(b) They (fem.) saw the house.

(c) They (fem.) have seen the house.

(d) Had you (mas.) seen the house before you came here yesterday ?

(e) Having seen the house the (fem.) have both gone there.

(f) On seeing the house she began to cry.

4. Do not translate the following sentences, but give Hindi of the words printed in bold:—

(a) **On** the table.

(b) It hangs **over** the bed.

(c) He lives **over** the river.

(d) Some went **before**.others followed **behind**

(e) He stood **before** the king.

(f) Come to me **before** you go.

(g) The king spoke **first, after him** the prime-minister.

(h) **All** the **three** came.

(i) It was surrounded by water **on all sides.**

(j) He sat **by** the king.

5 In the following sentences. translate only the words or group of words which are bold. using Participles or conjunctive participles :—

He rose and went away. She counted and found there were five, Just as he arived at the station, the train was leaving. Keeping on running. he got home. Take ten rupees out of the bag which is open. He opend the bag and took out ten rupees.

6. Translate the following into Hindi. giving special attention to the verbs and their objects:—

Cows eat grreen grass. The cows ate the grass, The girls have eaten sixteen mangoes, The boy had eaten two fishes. She saw the man, He saw these women

7. Give the feminine of देवर, तेली, ठाकुर, मोर, भेड़ा and the plural of कन्या. रीति, नदी, लोटा, राजा।

8 Give in figures and writing the Hindi of 49. 65. 74, 36, 57.

9 To illustrate the formation of compound verb give the Hindi of the following:—

He wished to go home.

He asked leave to go, but he did not get it,
He goes to Delhi every day.
He is now on the point of going.
You, too can go.

10 To illustrate the construction of past participle tenses of transitive verbs (ने का प्रयोग) translate the following into Hindi:—

She had opened her eyes. We saw her eyes. They have driven away the cows. I bought seven pearls. we caught many fishes. He sent two carts. They ploughed their field,

11. To illustrate the use of participles (क्रियाद्योतक कर्मवाचक संज्ञा) and conjunctive participles (पूर्वकालिक क्रिया) translate into Hindi the words in bold only.

Go **and** open the door. They **went out and** played. They **cooked and** ate the rice. Get **up and** run. **A dead** tiger is lying on the ground, wash **it in flowing** water, The drowning. man seized the **floating** bamboo with his **unboun** hand.

12. Give in figures and in words, the Hindi for:-
25, 42, 58, 237, 485.

13. To illustrate the formation of compound verb (संयुक्त क्रिया) translate the following into Hindi:—

He wishes to learn English. He has finished reading the book. They used to bathe every morning. The cat is able to catch the rat.

14. To illustrate the genders and numbers of nouns translate into Hindi the words in BOLD only.

(Numbers to be written both in figures and words).

CATS are said to have NINE LIVES. THIRTY-FOUR SHE-CAMELS in a line. GARLENTS were distributed to 275 guests. The queen had twenty seven COMPANIONS.

15. Trnslate the words underlined in the following and state which are honorific, relative anb possessive pronouns:—

O Pandit ! I tell YOU that Mohen burnt HIS fingers, and Sohan poured oil on his (Mohan's) hand.

O King ! YOU will see YOUR son getting off HIS horse and ordering HIS food to be given HIM.

16. To illustrate conjunctive participles (पूर्वकालिक क्रिया) and the use of ने with past participle forms, translate the following:—

He ran and threw away both stones.

She sat down and counted nine roots.

They went out and killed three tigresses.

They loosed and fed their mares with grass.

The good man, when he found poor widows fed them.

The doctor hah come and cured her eyes.

They found and tied three ropes to the cart.

17, To illustrate compound verbs (संयुक्त क्रिया) translate:—

He wants to sleep. they have finished eating. I cannot eat it.

18. Traslate the words in bold only.

(He stood) **over** the well—**upon** the ladder—**between** the gates—**inside** the house—**beyond** the river—**on this side of** the road—**below** the roof. (he went) **towards** the garden—**by way of** the village—**with** his father.

19. Using conjunctive participles (पूर्वकालिक क्रिया) translate the words in capitals.—

WHEN YOU GO, sav to him. COME AND speak to me. HE WENT and threw away the stone. He DREW his sword AND fough

20 With what kind of verbs and with what classt. of tenses of such verbs is ने to be joined to the noun of the agent ? Illustrate by translating the following:--

The girl sewed the sheet. The man has dug the ground. He had seen the beauty of the picture. He sent the girl to the house. She saw three boys.

21. Give the nominative and genitive plurals of राजा, माता, बात, स्त्री, भोला लड़का, छोटी लड़की ।

22. Translate the bold, words giving the correct pronouns:

Sit down and take **off your** shoes, and thenl **take off your** brother's shoes. **Now put away his** shoes and **yours.**

The robber tried to **hit his** head **with** a stone, but **hit his own** instead.

23, Illustrate the use of the Past tenses of verbs by translating into Hindi:—

She ate bread. The man ate fish The horses have eaten grass. He had eaten four mangoes. He went to his house, She spoke They lifted the stones. These stones have been lifted. He washed his face. She washed her face. They lifted the wood on to the cart. The wood was lifted on to my cart.

23, write the following numbers both in words and figures: 149, 325, 273, 199,646.

25. Using the correct forms of Compound Verbs, translate into Hindi the words in capital only:—

When I HAVE FINISHED LEARNING my lessons I shall be ABLE TO GO AND EAT my dinner, I do not WISH-TO-CALL for you. I ASKED you a question, I did not ASK for a stick, I AM IN THE HABIT OF GOING out daily. She is just ABOUT TO SING, although she does not WISH TO SING.

26. Using the corret tenses of the verbs and were NECESSARY, the Conjunctive Participle and

the Reflexive Pronoun, translate into Hindi the following senteuces :

The girl. putting on her hat, went out, and put a hat on her sister's head.

The boy fell down when runing after his ball
The mare was runing swifty, but the lazy horse was walking slowly.

If the policeman had not fallen down, he would have caught the thief.

I have finished reading all my books. so I want to read yours.

27. Name the genders of the following:—

धोबिन, निन्दा, जूता, हरिणी. पापी, दया, आँख, रात, घास' सभा।

28. Using the correct forms of Compound Verbs translate into Hindi the words in capital only:

This man CANNOT WALK.

This girl WISHES TO GO out,

I Began TO EAT the bread.

He ASKED leave to go, but did not GET IT

The boy HAS GONE TO SLEEP,LET him GO home.

You MUST READ this book, or you will REMAIN ignorant.

29. Translate the following, using the Reflexive Pronoun where Hindi idiom requires it:

A. (i) He wished that he might become clever like his brother.

(ii) She could not lift the bundle on to her head, so she let it lie where it was.

(iii) He found his seven cows near the river.

(iv) She drove her two donkeys to the village.

(v) The tailor was not able to sew the cloth because he had lost his needle.

B. Which of the verbs in the above sentences repuire the use of ने with the tenses formed from the Past Participle ?

30. Translate the following sentences, using the Past Conjunctive Participle (पूर्वकालिक क्रिया) where Hindi idiom requires it:

(i) She sat down and read her book.

(ii) He ran and caught the ball with his hand

(iii) He lifted the axe and cut the wood.

(iv) Go, and call the blacksmith.

(v) Take my purse and pay for the goods.

31. Translate the following, using both words and figures:

632, 63, 768, 46.

32. Giving attention to the genders and numbers of nouns, translate the words in bold only.

(a) The **mother** of the **boys** are present.

(b) I have five **fingers** on each hand.

(c) He says true **words**.

(d) We have **horses** and **mares**, **dogs** and **sheep**

(e) My **books** are in your **hands**.

23. Translate, using ने where necessary, also the Reflexive Pronoun:

(a) The king has gone out of his palace.

(b) The queen gave flowers to her daughter.

(c) The boy had walked a long way.

(d) If the girl had eaten her dinner, she would not have become so tired.

(e) The bird flew on to the tree.

(f) The dog bit my hand.

(g) He wanted to ask for bread.

(h) The rope was cut, who had cut it ?

34. Translate into Hindi:

(a) If he wished to go, why did he not ask to go?

(b) Having looked at her book, she shut it, and then said her lesson.

(c) If he had spelt the words correctly, we should not have mistaken his meaning.

(d) The boys have torn their clothes.

(e) They will have finished dinner by now, so we shall be able to wash the plates.

35. Translate into Hindi:

Green grass, black pearls, dirty fingernails, long ropes, fat cows.



Part VI.



VOCABULARY

481 words classified into 30 groups.

1. Fruits फल

आम m	mango	सेब m	apple
केला m	plantain	अनन्नास m	pin-apple
अमरूद m	guava	शरीफा m	custard-apple
नासपाती f	pear	पपीता m	papaya
नारंगी f	orange	बेर m	plum
लीची f	lichi	अनार m	pomegrariate
अंगूर m	grapes	नीबू m	lemon
जीर f	fig	कटहल m	jackfruit
		खरबूजा m	muskmelon

2 Vegetables तरकारी or सब्जी f

आलू m	potato	फूलगोभी f	cauliflower
मूली f	radish	बन्द गोभी f	cabbage
गाजर f	carrot	बैंगन m	brinjal
सेम m	bean	खीरा m	cucumber
टमाटर m	tomato	कोंहड़ा m	pumpkin
शलजम m	turnip		

3. Corn अनाज m

गेहूँ m	wheat	जौ m	barley
चना m	gram	मटर m	pea

धान m	paddy	चावल m	rice
मकई m	maize	ज्वार m	millet
सरसों f	mustard seed	राई f	mustard seed
तिल m	sesamum		

4. Food and Drink खाने पीने की चीजें

आटा m	flour	रोटी f	bread
दाल f	dal	दूध m	milk
भात m	boiled rice	दही m	curd
घी m	clarified butter	मक्खन m	butter
मांस m	meat	गोश्त m	meat
पानी m	water	चटनी f	chutni
नमक m	salt	चीनी f	suger
तेल m	oil	मधु m	honey
शहद m	honey	मिठाई f	sweet meat
चाय f	tea	अंडा m	egg
मछली f	fish	मिसरी f	sugar candy
बर्फ f	ice	शराब f	wine

5. Dry fruits मेवे

बादाम m	almond	किशमिश f	raisin
[illegible] m	date	मूंगफली f	groundnut
चीना बादाम m	ground-nut	अखरोट m	walnut

6. Spices मसाले

लाल मिर्च	f	chili	काली मिर्च	f	blackpepper
अदरक	m	ginger	प्याज	m	onion
लहसुन	m	garlic	लौंग	m	clove
इलायची	f	cardamom	हल्दी	f	turmeric or saffron
जीरा	m	cumin-seed	दालचीनी	f	cinnamon

7. Eating Utensils खाने पीने के बर्तन

प्याला	m	cup	बर्तन	m	dish, pot
काँटा	m	fork	छुरी	f	knife
चमचा चम्मच	m	spoon	कटोरा	m	bowl
थाली	f	plate	सुराही	f	water-jug
मेज़पोश	m	tadle cloth			

8. House-hold articles घर गृहस्थी की चीजें

कुरसी	f	chair	मेज	f	table
तिपाई	f	stool	चटाई	f	mat
गलीचा	f	carpet	लालटेन	m	lantern
घड़ी	f	clock	परदा	m	screen*
सन्दूक	m	box	तस्वीर	f	picture
			चित्र	m	"

बिछौना	m	bedding	खाट	f	bed, bedstead
			पलंग	m	bed
कम्बल	m	blanket	चादर	f	bed-sheet
मसहरी	f	mospuito curtain	तौलिया	m	towel
साबुन	m	soap	चाबी कुञ्जी f ताली		key
ताला	m	lock	आईना	m	looking-

9. Garments वस्त्र सम्बन्धी

कोट	m	coat	कमीज	f	shirt
पतलून	f	pantloon	टोप	m	hat
टोपी	f	hat, cap	जूता	m	shoe
मोजे	m	stockings	फीता	m	lace
बटन	m	button	अंगूठी	f	ring
पेटी	f	belt	छाता	m	umbrella
छड़ी	f	stick			

10. study पढ़ने का कमरा m

किताब	f	book	कागज	m	paper
पुस्तक	f	„	कलम	f	pen
दवात	f	ink-stand	स्याही	f	ink
निब	f	nib	रोशनाई	f	„
पेन्सिल	f	pencil	अलमारी	f	cupboard

चाकू m	pen-khife	डोरा m	thread
चिट्ठी f	letter	चिट्ठी का कागज़ f	letter paper
स्याही सोख m	blotting paper	घंटी f	bell
मोहर f	seal	लिफाफा m	envelope
टिकट m	stamps		

11. ANIMALS पशु or जानवर m

बिल्ली f	cat	कुत्ता m	dog
गाय f	cow	बैल m	ox
घोड़ा m	horse	बकरी f	goat
बन्दर m	monkey	गधा m	donkey
भैंस f	buffalo	सूअर m	pig
हाथी m	elephant	हिरन m	deer
ऊंट m	camel	सिंह m	lion
बाघ m	tiger	चीता m	leopard
भेड़िया m	wolf	लोमड़ी f	fox

12 BIRDS चिड़ियाँ

चिड़ियां f	bird	कौआ m	crow
पक्षी m	„	कबूतर m	pigeon
मुर्गी f	hen	उल्लू m	owl
तोता f	parrot	कोयल f	cuckoo
मोर m	peacock	बत्तख m	duck

चील	f	kite	बाज़	m	hawk
हंस	m	swan			

13. **Insects and Reptiles कीड़े मकोड़े m**

मक्खी	f	fly	बिच्छू	m	scorpion
मधुमक्खी	f	bee	खटमल	m	bug
मच्छर	m	mosquito	मकड़ी	f	spider
कीड़ा	m	worm or insect	ततैया	m	wasp
			भिड़	f	"
साँप	m	snake	तितली	f	butterfly
मेंढक	m	frog			

14. **Colours रङ्ग m**

काला	m	black	भूरा	m	brown
पीला	m	yellow	बैंगनी	m	violet
नीला	m	blue	सफेद	m	white
हरा	m	green	चितकबरा	m	spotted
लाल	m	red	हलका	m	light
गुलाबी	m	rose	गहरा	m	deep

15. **Relations** संबंधी or नातेदार

पिता	m	father	माता	f	mother
भाई	m	brother	बहिन	f	sister
चाचा, मामा			चाची, मामी		
फूफा, मौसा	m	uncle	फूफी, मौसी	f	aunt

लड़का, बेटा	m	son	लड़की, बेटी	f	daughter
भतीजा	m	nephew	भतीजी	f	niece
दादा नाना	m	grand father	दादी नानी	f	grand-mother
पोता, नाती	m	grand son	पोती नतनी	f	grand daughter
पति	m	husband	पत्नी	f	wife
ससुर	m	father in law	सास	f	mother in law

16. Parts of the Human Boby शारीरिक अँग m

शरीर	m	body	जीभ	f	tongue
आँख	f	eye	दाँत	m	tooth
नाक	f	nose	गर्दन	f	neck
मुंह	m	mouth	दाढ़ी	f	beard
चेहरा	m	face	मूंछ	f	moustache
सिर	m	head	कंधा	m	shoulder
भौं	f	eye-brow	हाथ	m	hand
बाल	m	hair	हथेली	f	palm
गाल	m	cheek	अंगुली	f	finger
नाखून	m	nail	पीठ	f	back
अंगूठा	m	thumb and toe	पैर, पाँव	m	foot
छाती	f	chest	जाँघ	f	thigh
कमर	m	waist	तला तलवा,	m	sole
एड़ी	f	heel	कान	m	ear
			पेट	m	stomach

17 Nature प्रकृति f

आकाश, आसमान m	sky	जलप्रपात m	water fall
चन्द्रमा, चाँद m	moon	तालाब m	pond
सूर्य,सूरज m	sun	नाला m	rivulet
तारा m	star	झील f	lake
पृथ्वी जमीन f	earth	टापू m	island
नदी f	river	समुद्र m	sea
पहाड़ m	hill	झरना m	spring

18. Men in Various Walks of life

डाक्टर m	doctor	वकील m	lawyer
वैद्य m	physician	सिपाही m	soldier
हकीम m	"		police man
दूकानदार m	shop keeper	लेखक m	writer
अफसर m	officer	कवि m	poet
गुरू m	teacher	चित्रकार m	painter
शिक्षक m	"	पादरी m	clergy man
अध्यापक m	"	व्यापारी m	merchant

19. Professions पेशे m

बनिया m	grocer	बढ़ई m	carpenter
किसान m	farmer	राज-मिस्त्री m	mason
दर्जी m	tailor	कसाई m	butcher

लोहार	m	blacksmith	चमार	m	shoe maker
सोनार	m	goldsmith	नाई, हज्जाम	m	barber
धोबी	m	washerman	तेली	m	oilman
माली	m	gardener	चौकीदार	m	watchman
कुली	m	porter	चपरासी	m	peon
ग्वाला	m	milkman	रसोइया	m	cook
मछुआ	m	fisherman	घड़ीसाज	m	watch maker

20 Sports खेल m

गेंद	m	ball	दौड़	f	run, race
फुटबाल	m	foot-ball	ताश	m	playing card
हाकी	m	hockey	शतरंज	m	chess
क्रिकेट	m	cricket	पतंग	m	kite
टेनिस	m	tennis	तैरना	m	swimming
पोलो	m	polo	शिकार	m	hunt

21. Conveyances सवारी f

गाड़ी	f	carriage	बैलगाड़ी	f	bullock-cart
रेलगाड़ी	f	train	पालकी	f	palanquin
ट्रामगाड़ी	f	tramcar	पैरगाड़ी	f	bicycle
नाव	f	boat	हवागाड़ी	f	motor-car
जहाज	m	ship	हवाई जहाज	m	aeroplane

22. Weapons हथियार m

बन्दूक f	gun	धनुष, कमान m	bow
तमंचा m	pistol	बाण or तीर m	arrow
गोली f	bullet	कुल्हाड़ी f	hatchet
बरछा f	spear	ढाल m	shield
भाला m	lance	लाठी f	stick
छुरा m	dagger		

23 Diseases रोग m

बुखार m	fever	दाद m	ringworm
जड़ैया m	malaria	हैजा m	cholera
सर्दी, जुकाम m	cold	प्लेग m	plague
खाँसी f	cough	चेचक	smallpox
घाव m	sore	तपेदिक m	tuberculosis
सिर दर्द m	headache	कोढ़ m	leprosy
खुजली f	itches	महामारी f	epidemic
आँव m	bysenetry	कै f	vomiting
दस्त m	diarrhoea		

24 Time समय or वक्त m

घंटा m	hour
मिनट m	minute
सेकंड m	second
दिन m	day

रात f	night
सप्ताह हफ्ता m	week
महीना, मास m	month
वर्ष, साल m	year
सवेरे प्रातः m	morning
भोर; सुबह f	„
संध्या, साँझ, शाम f	evening
दोपहर f	mid-day, noon
आधी रात f	mid-night

25. Week हफ़्ता (सप्ताह)

इतवार, रविवार m	sunday
सोमवार m	Monday
मंगलवार m	Tuesday
बुधवार m	Wednesday
बीरवार, गुरुवार or बृहस्पतिवार m	Thursday
शुक्रवार m	Friday
शनिवार, सनीचर m	Saturday

26. देश और शहर आदि

हिन्दुस्तान m	India
शहर m	city
कलकत्ता m	Calcutta
बम्बई m	Bombay

मद्रास m	Mabras
पटना m	Patna
बनारस m	Benares
काशी f	
इलाहाबाद m	Allahabad
लखनऊ m	Lucknow
दिल्ली, देहली f	Delhi
लाहौर m	Lahore
शिमला m	Simla
कराँची f	Karachi
पुरी f	Puri
पेशावर m	Peshawar
दार्जिलिंग m	Darjeeling
नागपुर m	Nagpur
गंगा f	The Ganges
जमुना f	The iumna
हिमालय m	The Himalayas

27. Months महीने m

Hindi months	Corresponding English months
चैत (चैत्र) m	March
बैसाख (वैषाख)	April
जेठ (ज्येष्ठ) m	May

Hindi Months	Corresponding English Months
असाढ़ (आषाढ़) m	June
सावन (श्रावण) m	July
भादों (भाद्रपद) m	August
क्वार (आश्विन) m	September
कातिक (कार्तिक) m	Octoder
अगहन (मार्गशीर्ष) m	November
पूस (पौष) m	December
माघ m	January
फागुन (फाल्गुन) m	February

28. Seasons ऋतुयें f

बसन्त m	spring
ग्रीष्म f (गर्मी)	hot season
वर्षा f (बरसात)	rainy season
शरद् f	Autumn
हेमन्त m (जाड़ा)	winter
शिशिर m ,,	cold or dewy season

29. Coins सिक्के m

पैसा m	=	3 pies
अधन्ना m	=	6 pies
आना m	=	12 pies

दुअन्नी f	=	2 anna piece
चौअन्नी f	=	4 anna ,,
अठन्नी f	=	8 auna ,,
नोट m	=	note
पाँच रूपये का नोट	=	five rupee note
दस रूपये का नोट	=	ten rupee note

30 Weight तौल m

तोला m	=	exact weight of a rupee
छटाँक m	=	5 tolas
पाव m	=	20 tolas
सेर m	=	80 tolas
पसेरी f	=	5 seers
मन m	=	40 seers



Part VII



VOCABULARY
ENGLISH-HINDI



(753 words)

ABBREVIATIONS:

m=masculin; (noun) f=feminine; adj=adjective int=intransitive (verb); t=transitive (verb); qron=pronoun; adv=adverb; conj=conjunction; interj=interjection; p.p.=postpos.tion

A

Able,to	सकना v. i. adj. योग्य, लायक चतुर
About	करीब; लगभग, नजदीक,निकट, चारौ तरफ बारे में, विषय में adv.
Abouse	गाली f, verb गाली देना t.
Accept, to	मानना, स्वीकार करना int.
Account	हिसाब; हाल m
Acquire, to	प्राप्त करना, पाना, हासिल करना, कमाना t.
Across	पार, आरपार, तिरछा adv. and p. p.
Advantage	लाभ, फायदा m
After	पीछे, पश्चात्, अनुकुल adv. and p. p.
Afternoon	तीसरा पहर m दोपहर के बाद
Again	फिर एकबार और, दूसरी दफा adv.
Almirah	अलमारी f
Alas	आह, शोक, हाय, अहः, हा interj.

All	सारा, सब, पूरा, कुलadi.
Alms	भीख भिक्षा, f दान खैरात m
Alone	अकेला adj
Although	यद्यपि ऐसा होने पर भी conj
Among	बीच, में. भीतर p. p.
And	और, तथा, वा conj
Animal	पशु जानवर m
Anna	आना m
Answer	उत्तर, जवाब m
Anxious	चिन्तित, व्याकुल, बेचैन
Any	कोई, किसी adj
Arabic	अरबी f
Arm	बाँह, भुजा f arms हथियार m
Arrive	पहुँचना int
Arrow	तीर, बाण m
As	ऐसा, जैसा, क्योंकि, ज्योंही adv.and conj
Ask, to	पूछना माँगना (request)
At last	अन्त में आखिर को adv.
Axe	कुल्हाड़ी

B

Baby	बच्चा m or f
Back	पीठ f पीछे adv.

Bamboo	बाँस m
Bank (of riuer)	किनारा, तट, तीर m
Bare	नङ्गा, नग्न, खुला हुआ adj–
Bark	छाल, छिलका m verb भूकना int
Bathe to	नहाना, स्नान करना int.
Basket	टोकरी, डलिया f
Battle	लड़ाई युद्ध m
Bear	रीछ, भालू m, verb सहना f
Beak	चोंच f
Be, to	होना रहना, int.
Bengali	बङ्गाली f (lanquage)
Beauty	सुन्दरता, शोभा, खूबसूरती f
Beautiful	सुन्दर, खूबसूरती adj.
Because	क्योंकि, इस कारण से conj
Bed	बिछौना. बिस्तरा m (bedding) खाट खटिया चारपाई f पलङ्ग m (bed-stead)
Before	आगे, सामने p. p.
Beggar	भिखारी m or f
Begain, to	लगना. int. शुरू करना, आरम्भ करना
Behind	पीछे p. p.
Believe to	विश्वास करना, यकीन करना t.
Bell	घन्टी f

Beloved	प्यारा, प्रिय adj
Below	नीचे तले p. p.
Best	सबसे अच्छा, उत्तम adj.
Beyond	के पार, परे आगे p. p.
Big	बड़ा भारी adj
Bird	चिड़िया f पक्षी, m
Birth	जन्म m
Black	काला adj
Blanket	कम्बल m
Blessing	आशीर्वाद m
Blind	अन्धा adj
Blood	लहू, खून, रक्त m
Boat	नाव. m किश्ती, डोंगी f
Body	शरीर, देह m
Boil to	उगालना f.
Bold	साहसी, बहादुर adj
Book	पुस्तक, किताब, f
Both	दोनों adj. & pron.
Box	सन्दूक m
Boy	लड़का, बालक m
Branch	डाली, शाखा f

Brass	पीतल m
Bread	रोटी f
Break, to	तोड़ना, t.
Brick	ईंट f
Bride	दुलहिन, बधू, f
Bridegroom	दुल्हा, वर, m
Bridge	पुल m
Bring. to	लाना, ले आना t.
Broad	चौड़ा adj.
Broom	झाड़, बुहारी, बढ़नी f
Build, to	बनाना t.
Bullet	गोली (बन्दूक) f
Bunch	गुच्छा m
Burn, to	जलना; फूँकना t.
Butcher	कसाई वधिक m.
But	अतिरिक्त सिवाय p. p. परन्तु (पर) किन्तु लेकिन conj,
Butter	मक्खन m
Buy. to	खरीदना, मोल लेना t.

C

Call, to	बुलाना(summon). पुकारना(call). कहना,
Calf	बछड़ा, बछवा (male) बछिया (female).

Can	सकना int.
Candle	मोमबत्ती f
Cap	टोपी f
Capital	राजधानी f (country) पूंजी f (money
Care	चिन्ता. फिक्र f परवाह; ध्यान m
Carry	लेजाना, ढोना f
Catch, to	पकड़ना t.
Certain	निश्चय पक्का (sure)कोई, एक, कितने adj
Chain	ज़ंजीर f
Chair	कुर्सी (कुरसी) f
Chairman	सभापति m
Charcoal	लकड़ी का कोयला m
Cheap	सस्ता adj
Chief	मुख्य, खास, adj. सरदार, मुखिया m
Child	बच्चा, बालक m or f
Christian	ईसाई m or f
Church	गिरजा m
City	शहर; नगर m
Clap, to	ताली बजाना t
Class	कक्षा, श्रेणी f दर्जा जमात m
Clean	साफ adj
Clerk	मुंशी, लेखक, किरानी m

Clever	चालाक, होशियार, चतुर, adj.
Climate	आबहवा f, जलवायु, मौसिम m
Climb, to	चढ़ना int.
Close, to	बंद करना t.
Cloth	कपड़ा, वस्त्र m
Cloud	बादल m
Cold	ठंड m सर्दी f
Command	आज्ञा f हुक्म m
Complain	शिकायत f
Condition	दशा, अवस्था, हालत, f (state), शर्त f (term)
Congratulation	बधाई, मुबारकबादी f
Consent, to	स्वीकार करना, मन्जूर करना, मानना t.
Conversation	बातचीत f
Cook, to	पकाना t
Copy to	नकल करना; नकल उतारना t
Cost	दाम, मूल्य m कीमत f
Count, to	गिनती करना गिनना t
Counterfiet	नकली खोटा adj.
Conntry	देश, मुल्क m
Courage	साहस m, हिम्मत f
Court	कचहरी, अदालत f (of law) दरबार m (royal)

Cover. to	छिपाना; ढाँकना t
Crowd	भीड़ f
Crown	मुकट, ताज m
Crv, to	रोना, int. पुकारना t
Cultivator	किसान m
Cure, to	अच्छा करना चङ्गा करना आराम करना

D

Dance, to	नाचना int.
Dark	अंधेरा, काला adj.
Date	तारीख, तिथि, मिति खजूर m (fruit)
Deaf	बहरा abj
Dear	प्यारा, प्रिय adj. महंगा (costly)
Deceive, to	धोखा देना, छल करना t.
Deer	हिरन मृग m
Defeat	हार, पराजय, t
Delay	देरी t विलम्ब m, verb देरी करना, टालना
Desire	इच्छा चाह f
Die, to	मरजाना, देहान्त होना. स्वर्गवास होना int
Difficult	कठिन मुश्किल adj
Dig. to	खोदना t.
Dinner	भोजन, खाना m
Dirty	मैला, गन्दा adj.

Disease	रोग m, बीमारी f
District	ज़िला m
Do, to	करना t.
Door	दरवाज़ा, द्वार m
Doubt	सन्देह, शक m शंका f
Dozen	दर्जन adj.
Drain	नाली, मोरी f
Dress	कपड़ा, वस्त्र, पोशाक m
Drink, to	पीना t
Drive, to	हांकना, चलाना t.
Drop	बूंद f
Dry	सूखा adj.
Dumb	गूंगा adj.
Dust	धूल, मिट्टी f
Dye, to	रंगना t.

E

Each	हरएक, प्रत्येक, प्रति adj.
Early	सवेरे, पूर्व जल्दी, शीघ्र adv.
Earn, to	कमाना, पैदा करना t.
Earth	पृथ्वी, दुनिया f संसार, m मिट्टी, भूमि, जमीन
Earthquake	भूडोल, भूचाल, भूकम्प m
E a	सरल, सहज, आसान adj.

East	पूरब (पूर्व) m
Eat to	खाना, भोजन करना t.
Edge	किनारा, कोर m
Education	शिक्षा. तालीम, पढ़ाई. f
Egg	अंडा m
Elder	बड़ा adj.
Electricity	बिजली f
Else	और भी adj. and pronoun, नहीं, तो, अतिरिक्त, तो, adv. conj.
Employ, to	नौकर रखना, काम में लगाना t.
Employer	मालिक m
Empty	खाली adj.
End	अन्त m
Enemy	शत्रु, बैरी. दुश्मन m or f
English	अंग्रेज़ी f (language)
	अंग्रेज़ m (people)
Enter, to	घुसना, t. भीतर जाना int.
Equal	समान, बराबर, एकसा adj.
Error	अशुद्धि. गलती, भूल f
Essay	लेख, निबन्ध m
Evening	संध्या, साँझ, शाम f
Examination	परीक्षा, f इम्तिहान m

Exchange, to	बदलना f
Excuse, to	क्षमा करना, माफ करना t
Explain, to	समझाना, बतलाना t
Eye	आँख f नेत्र m

F

Face	मुंह (मुख);चेहरा m
Fair	सुन्दर, साफ़, गोरा adj
Faithful	ईमानदार, सच्चा, विश्वासी adj
Fall, to	गिरना int
Famine	अकाल m
Famous	प्रसिद्ध, मशहूर, नामी adj
Far	दूर adj. and adv.
Farmer	किसान m
Fast	व्रत, उपवास m ; तेज़, जल्दी adj
Fat	मोटा adj
Father	पिता, बाप m
Feast	भोज, m दावत f
Fault	दोष, कसूर m
Fear	डर, भय m
Feather	पर, पंख m
Feed, to	खिलाना t
Festival	त्योहार, पर्व, उत्साह m

Field	खेत. मैदान m
Fight to	लड़ना, int युद्ध करना t
Fill to	भरना t
Finish, to	पूरा करना. समाप्त करना, खत्म करन t
Fire	आग, अग्नि f
Fish	मछली f
Fisher-man	मछुआ, मल्लाह, धीमर m
Flag	झण्डा, m; झण्डी f
Flesh	मांस. गोश्त m
Flood	बाढ़ f
Floor	फ़र्श m
Flour	आटा; मैदा m
Flower	फूल m
Fool	मूर्ख, बेवकूफ m
Forbid, to	मना करना t
Forget, to	भूलना, भूल जाना int
Forest	जङ्गल; वन m
Fork	कांटा m
Fort-night	पक्ष m
Friend	मित्र, दोस्त m
Fresh	ताज़ा, नया adj
Front	सामने, आगे pp

Fulfil, to	पूरा करना t
Fun	खेल, तमाशा m दिल्लगी f
Furnitur	माल, असबाब, सामान m

G

Ganges	गङ्गा (गंगा) f
Garden	बाग़, बगीचा m ; फुलवाड़ी f
Gate	फाटक, दरवाजा m
Gather	बटोरना, इकट्ठा करना t
Geography	भूगोल m
Gentleman	सज्जन, महाशय m
Ghost	भूत, प्रेत m
Glass	शीशा, काँच, आइना(mirror)गिलास m (tumbler)
Go to	जाना int
Go beck, to	लौटना, वापिस जाना int
Goat	बकरा m ; बकरी f
God	ईश्वर, परमेश्वर, भगवान, खुदा, देवता m
Goddess	देवी f
Gold	सोना m
Gong	घन्टा m घन्टी f
Good	अच्छा, भला, नेक. उम्दा, बढ़िया adj
Goods	माल, असबाब m

Government	सरकार f
Grammar	व्याकरण m
Grass	घास f
Graze, to	चरना, int चराना t
Great	बड़ा, महान, उत्तम adj
Groom	साईस; दूल्हा m
Ground	जमीन, भूमि, धरती f
Gum	गोंद m verb गोंद से चिपकाना t

H

Habit	आदत, बान f अभ्यास m (practice) स्वभाव m प्रकृति f (nature)
Hair	बाल, केश m
Half	आधा adj
Hang to	लटकना, int ; लटकाना t
Happiness	सुख, आनन्द, m ; खुशी f
Hord	कड़ा, सख्त, m ; कठिन, मुश्किल adj (difficult
Hat	टोपी, f ; टोप m
Hear, to	सुनना t
Heart	दिल, हृदय, मन m
Heat	गरमी (गर्मी) f
Heavy	भारी adj

Help, to	सहायता करना, मदद करना t
Here	यहाँ, यहाँ पर, इस जगह adv
Hide	छिपना int; छिपाना t
High	ऊँचा adj
Hill	पहाड़ m
Him	उसको, उसे pron
Hit to	मारना t
Holiday	छुट्टी, तातील f
Home	घर, मकान, वतन m; जन्मभूमि f
Honest	ईमानदार, सच्चा adj
Honey	मधु, शहद f
Hoof	खुर, सुम m
Hope	आशा, उम्मेद f
Horn	सींग m
Hospital	अस्पताल m
Hot	गरम adj
How	कैसा adj कैसे adv
Hunger	भूख f भूखा (hungry) adj
Hurt, to	दुख देना, दुखाना t
Hunter	शिकारी m

I

I	मैं pron
Ice	बरफ़ f

Idle	आलसी adj
If	यदि; जो, अगर conj.
Ill	बीमार adj बीमारी f (illness)
Important	आवश्यक, मुख्य, बड़ा adj
In	में, भीतर, अन्दर p.p.
Indeed	सचमुच, यथार्थ; वास्तव में adv
Invite, to	बुलाना, निमंत्रण देना t
Iron	लोहा, इस्तरी करना t
Instead	बदले में, जगह में, बजाय adv

J

Jar	घड़ा m
Jamna (River)	जमुना f
Jackal	स्यार, गीदड़ m
Join, to	जोड़ना, मिलाना
Joke	हंसी, दिल्लगी f
Journey	यात्रा f ; सफर m
Joy	आनन्द m ; खुशी f
Jump	कूदना int

K

Kalimpong	कैलिम्पङ्ग m
Keep to,	रखना, धरना t
Kerosene	मिट्टी का तेल m

Kill	मारना डालना, जान से t
Kind	दयालु, कृपालु, महत्ववान abj , प्रकार, किस्म m . तरह भाँति f (sort)
King	राजा, महाराजा, बादशाह m
Kiss, to	चूमना. प्यार करना, बोसा लेना t
Kitchen	रसोईघर, बावर्ची खाना m
Knee	घुटना m
Know, to	जानना पहचाना (rcognise)

L

Labourer	मजदूर m
Ladder	सीढ़ी f
Lady	स्त्री, महिला, देवी, मेमसाहिब f
Lame	लंगड़ा adj
Lamp	लालटेन , चिराग m, बत्ती f
Land	ज़मीन, भूमि f, मुल्क देश m (country)
Language	भाषा, बोली, जबान f
Large	बड़ा m
Late	देर adj
Laugh, to	हँसना int,
Laziness	सुस्ती f. आलस्य m
Lazy	सुस्त. आलसी adj
Leaf	पत्ता m, पत्ती f ; सफा (page)

Leap	उछलना, कूदना int
Learn, to	सीखना, पढ़ना, याद करना t
Learned	विद्वान्, पंडित adj
Leather	चमड़ा m
Leave	छुट्टी, आज्ञा f, छोड़ना t
Left	बाँया adj
Less	कम, थोड़ा adj
Lesson	पाठ, सबक m, शिक्षा f
Let, to	देना t
Letter	चिट्ठी f, पत्र, खत, अक्षर m (alphabet)
Lick to	चाटना t
Lie, to	लेटना, झूठ बोलना int
Life	प्राण, जीवन m, जान, जिन्दगी f
Lift, to	उठाना t
Like, to	चाहना, पसन्द करना t, समान, ऐसा adj
Lime	चूना m
Liquor	मदिरा, शराब f alcoholic)
Little	छोटा, थोड़ा; जरा adj
Live, to	रहना, जीना, जीता रहना int
Load	बोझ, भार m; verb ढोना t
Loaf	पाव रोटी, डबलरोटी f
Long	लम्बा adj, बड़ी दूर, बड़ी देर adv

Loose	ढीला adj
Love	प्रेम, प्यार m
Lovely	सुन्दर, मनोहर adj

M

Machine	मशीन; f , कल m
Mad	पागल adj
Magisrtate	मॅजिस्ट्रेट, हाकिम m
Maid-servant	नौकरानी, दासी f
Mail	डाक f
Make. to	बनाना, करना, पैदा करना, f
Man	आदमी, मनुष्य m
Many	बहुत. अनेक adj
Map	नक्शा m
Marriage	विवाह, व्याह m. शादी f
Ma-ter	मालिक m
Magic	जादू m .
Me	मुझे pron
Meal	खाना, भोजन m
Meanwhile	इसी बीच में. तब तक, इतने में adv
Medicine	दवा, दवाई, औषधि f
Meet, to	मिलना int भेंट करना, मुलाकात करना t,
Meeting	सभा f , जलसा m

Middle	बीच, मध्य m
Mile	मील m
Milk	दूध m, verb दुहना
Mind	चित्त; मन, दिल m, verb ध्यान देना t
Miser	कन्जूस adj.
Mistake	गलती, भूल, अशुद्धि f
Mix, to	मिलाना t
Mohammedan	मुसलमान m
Money	रुपया, पैसा, धन m
Mongoose	नेवला m
More	और, अधिक, ज्यादा adj.
Mosque	मसजिद f
Move, to	चलना, हटना int, चलाना, हटाना t
Mule	खच्चर m
Museum	अजायबघर m
My	मेरा, अपना (reflexive)

N

Nail	कील, काँटी f, नाखून, नख m
Naked	नङ्गा adj
Name	नाम m
Narrow	तङ्ग adj
Near	पास, निकट, नज़दीक, समीप, करीब adv

Neck	गला, m ; गर्दन f
Necklace	माला f , हार m
Needle	सुई f
Neighbour	पड़ोसी m
Net	जाल, फन्दा m (trap)
Never	कभी नहीं, adv.
New	नया, नवीन, नूतन adj
News	खबर f समाचार m
News-paper	अखबार, समाचार पत्र m
Next	उसके बाद, दूसरा, आगामी, adj.
Nice	अच्छा, उम्दा, बारीक adj.
Noise	आवाज f , शोर, गुल m
North	उत्तर m
Now-a-days	आजकल, इन दिनों adv
Number	संख्या; गिनती f , अंक m (figure)
Nurse	नर्स, दाई f

O

Oath	कसम, शपथ, सौगन्ध f
Obey	आज्ञा मानना, हुक्म मानना, करना t
Occupation	काम, पेशा, धन्धा m
Office	पद, ओहदा, दफ्तर m (building)
Officer	अफसर, ओहदेदार m

Often प्राय, बहुधा अक्सर बार बार adv

Ointmeut मरहम. मलहम m

Old पुराना, बुड्ढा, बूढ़ा adj

One-eyed काना adj

Only केवल, खाली. सिर्फ adv अकेला (single) adj

Open. to खुलना int , खोलना t

Opinion बिचार m. राय, सम्मति f

Or या, वा, अथवा conj

Oral जबानी, मौखिक adj

Order आज्ञा f , हुक्म m , verb आज्ञा देना, हुक्म देना t

Ornament सजावट f (decoration) गहना, जेवर m (jewellery)

Orphan यतीम, अनाथ adj ,यतीमखाना अनाथालय (orphanage)

Other दूसरा, और, अन्य, पराया adj.

Our हमारा, अपना, pron.

Out बाहर. दूर adv.

P

Pain दर्द, दुख. m , पीड़ा f

Pair जोड़ा adj.

Palace महल, राजमहल m

Punjab पंजाब, m पंजाबी (language)

Parent	माँ-बाप, माता-पिता m
Path	पथ, रास्ता, मार्ग m
Pay, to	चुकाना, देना t, (noun) वेतन, तलब, तनख्वाह f (pay)
Pearl	मोती m
Peasant	किसान m (farmar) देहाती (rustic)
People	लोग m , जनता, प्रजा f (subjeet)
Permission	आज्ञा, इजाज़त f , हुक्म m
Pice	पैसा m
Picture	चित्र m ; तसवीर
Piece	टुकड़ा m
Pillar	खंभा m
Pity	दया f , रहम m
Place	जगह, स्थान f
Play, to	खेलना int, noun नाटक m (play)
Playful	खिलाड़ी adj
Please, to	खुश करना, प्रसन्न करना t
Plough	हल m , verb हल जोतना t
Pocket	जेब t
Police	पुलिस f , सिपाही m
Poor	गरीब, कंगाल, दरिद्र, बेचारा adj (miserable)

Post, to	डाक में डालना t
Post-office	डाकघर, डाकखाना m
Pot	बर्तन m
Prayer	प्रार्थना f
Press	छापाखाना m
Prey	शिकार m
Price	दाम, मूल्य m, कीमत f
Prime minister	प्रधान-मन्त्री, वज़ीरे-आज़म m
Prince	राजकुमार, शाहज़ादा m
Prize	इनाम, पुरस्कार, पारितोषिक m
Punish, to	सज़ा देना, दण्ड देना t
Purchase, to	खरीदना, मोललेना t
Put, to	रखना, धरना; रखदेना t, पहिनना (put on)

Q

Quarrel	झगड़ा, लड़ाई f
Queen	रानी, महारानी, बेगम f
Question	प्रश्न, सवाल m, ve b प्रश्न करना, सवाल पूछना t
Quickly	जल्दी, तुरन्त, शीघ्र, झटपट adv
Quietly	चुपचाप, धीरे धीरे, खामोशी से adv
Quite	सब, बिल्कुल adv

R

Rabbit	खरगोश खरहा m
Rag	चिथड़ा m
Rain	वर्षा बारिश f, मेघ (मेंह) पानी m; verb बरसना int.
Raise, to	उठाना ऊंचा करना t
Raw	कच्चा adj.
Ray	किरण (किरन f
Razor	छुरा उस्तरा m
Read, to	पढ़ना बांचना t
Ready	तैयार m(prepared)·शीघ्र फौरन तुरन्त m (prompt)
Receipt	रसीद f
Receive, to	लेना पाना मिलना स्वागत करना t (welcome)
Recognise, to	पहचानना, जानना t
Recommend, to	सिफारिश करना t
Refund. to	लौटाना, वापिस, करना, फेरना t
Remind, to	याद दिलाना t.
Reply	उत्तर, जवाब m
Require. to	चाहना, मांगना t
Rest	आराम m

Return,to	लौट आना वापिस आना int.
Rice	चावल m (uncooked)
	भात m (cooked)
Rich	धनी धनवान अमीर adj.
Riches	धन m, दौलत, सम्पत्ति f
Ride, to	चढ़ना सवार होना int.
Right	दाहिना (not left) ठीक सही (correct)
	noun अधिकार m
Ripe	पक्का adj,
Road	सड़क f
Rob, to	चोरी करना, लूटना t
Robber	चोर डाकू m
ROom	कमरा m, कोठरी f (apartment)
	जगह f स्थान m (space)
Roof	छत f
Rope	रस्सी डोरी f
Rose	गुलाब m
Round	गोल घेरा चक्कर m, निकट नजदीक (about) adv and q.p.
Run, to	दौड़ना भागना भाग जाना int. (to run away)

S

Sad	उदास adj.
Saddle	ज़ीन m
Sago	साबूदाना m
Sample	नमूना m बानगी f
Sand	बालू m रेत f
Save, to	बचाना, किफ़ायत करना t (economise)
Say; to	कहना, बात करना, बताना t
Scales	तराज़ू f
School	स्कूल विद्यालय मदरसा m पाठशाला f
Scream, to	चिल्लाना, चीखना int.
Search, to	खोजना ढूँढना तलाश करना पता लगाना t
See. to	देखना; ताकना (stare) t
Seed	बीज बीया m
Self	आप ख़ुद pron.
Sell, to	बेचना t
Send, to	भेजना, बुलाना t (send for)
Separate, to	अलग होना, जुदा होना; int. करना t
Several	कई, अनेक, कई एक adj,
Shade	छाया छाँह f
Shake; to	हिलना, काँपना int. हिलाना t
Shame	लज्जा; लाज, शर्म f

Still	तिसपरभी तथापि तोभी (nevertheless) adv., चुपचाप मौन खामोश शांत adj.
Stone	पत्थर m
Story	कहानी किस्सा कथा f
Street	रास्ता सड़क m गली f
Student	विद्यार्थी छात्र m
Study, to	पढ़ना सीखना t.
Subject	विषय मज़मून m (topic) noun प्रजा f
Such	ऐसा वैसा जैसा इसी प्रकार का adj.
Suck, to	चूसना (दूध) पीना t
Sue, to	नालिश करना t
Suffer	सहना बर्दाश्त करना नुकसान उठाना t (suffer, loss)
Sudden	अचानक अकस्मात एकाएक सहसा adv.
Sufficient	बस बहुत काफी adj.
Sugar-cane	गन्ना ऊख m
Sure	निश्चय अवश्य जरूर adj.
Surprise	आश्चर्य अचम्भा विस्मय m
Surround, to	घेरना, घेर लेना t
Sweep, to	झाड़ना बुहारना int.
Swear, to	कसम खाना t
Sweet	मीठा मधुर adj.
Swift	तेज adj.

Swim, to	तैरना int.
Swing	झूला m झुलाना हिलाना t
Sword	तलवार f

T

Table	मेज़ f
Tail	पूंछ दुम f
Talk, to	बात करना, बातचीत करना t
Tall	लम्बा, ऊंचा adj.
Tame	पालतू. घरेलू adj.
Tank	तालाब; सरोवर m
Teach, to	पढ़ाना, सिखाना, शिक्षा देना t
Teacher	अध्यापक शिक्षक उस्ताद गुरु m
Tear	आँसू m
Tear, to	चीरना फाड़ना टुकड़े करना, t
Telegram	तार m or f
Tell, to	बतलाना, बोलना, कहना, t
Temple	मन्दिर m
Tent	डेरा. तंबू, खेमा m
Terrible	भयानक, डरावना adj.
Than	से, अपेक्षा, बनिस्बत से p p.
Thank, to	धन्यवाद देना or करना t
Thankful	कृतज्ञ adj.

Thankless	कृतघ्न adj.
That	वह उस pron. & adj. जो, कि conj.
Their	उनका अपना pron.
Them	उन्हें, उनको pron.
Then	तब उसके बाद, उसके पीछे उस समय adv
There	वहां, वहाँ पर, उधर, उस जगह adv.
Therefore	इसलिये, इस कारणसे, अतः, अतएव conj
Thick	मोटा (e. g. cloth, paper). गाढ़ा (e.g. liquid), घना (dense) adj.
Thief	चोर m चोरी f (theft)
Thin	पतला, दुबला, (weakly) बारीक (fine) adj.
This	यह इस pron.
Thither	वहाँ; उधर adv.
Thorn	काँटा m
Though	यद्यपि conj
Thread	धागा, तागा, सूत
Through	मेंसे, मेंहोकर, के द्वारा pp.
Throw, to	फेंकना t
Thunder, to	गरजना int.
Tidy	साफ, सुथरा. ठीक-ठाक adj.
Tighten, to	कसना t
Timid	कायर, डरपोक, भीरू adj.

To	को के पास तक p.p.
Together	एक साथ मिलकर, मिल-जुल कर adv.
Too	भी (as well) बहुत अति (excess)adv
Touch, to	छूना t
Toward	को ओर की तरफ p.p.
Town	नगर शहर m
Toy	खिलौना m
Translate, to	अनुवाद करना उल्था करना तर्जुमा करना t
Trap	फंदा m (snare)
Treasury	ख़ज़ाना कोष m
Tree	पेड़ वृक्ष m
Tremble, to	कांपना int.
Tributary	सहायक छोटा adj.
Troop	फौज पल्टन सेना f
Trouble	तकलीफ f कष्ट दुःख m
True	सच्चा सच सत्य ठीक adj.
Truth	सचाई f सत्य ठीक m
Try, to	कोशिश करना यत्न करना(endeavour) जाँचना (test) t
Tumble, to	गिर पड़ना int.
Turban	पगड़ी f साफा m
Turn to	घूमना फिरना मुड़ना बदलना int. घुमाना फिराना t, noun बारी f

Twice दूना, दुगना, दोबार adv.
Ty-phoon तूफान m.

U

Umbrella छाता m , छतरी f
Under नीचे, तले p p.
Understand, to समझना, जानना, मालूम करना t
Unite, to मिलाना, जोड़ना, एक करना t
University विश्वविद्यालय m
Untill जब तक conj, तक p.p.
Untouchable अछूत m
Unworthy अयोग्य नालायक abj
Up ऊँचा adj ; ऊपर पर p. p.
Uplift, to उठाना t
Urgent जरूरी, आवश्यक, जल्दी का adj
Urinal पेशाबघर m
Us हमें. हमको prop.
Use, to काम में लाना int इस्तेमाल करना t
Useful उपयोगी, लाभदायक, काम का adj.

V

Vacant खाली adj.
Vacation छुट्टी f
Vaccination टीका m

Value	दाम m , कीमत f
Vegetadle	तरकारी, सब्ज़ी, भाजी, साग (शाक) m
Veil	परदा, घूँघट, बुरका m
Very	बहुत, अत्यन्त adj. and adv. (exceedingly)
Victory	जीत, जय, विजय, फतह f
Village	गाँव, ग्राम. बस्ती f
Villain	बदमाश, दुष्ट, दुर्जन, पाजी adj.
Virgin	कुमारी, क्वाँरी, कन्या f
Visit, to	भेंट करना , मुलाकात करना t. मिलना int. देखना t
Vomit, to	कै करना, उलटी करना t

W

Wages	वेतन, तलब m, तनख्वाह मज़दूरी f (daily)
Wait, to	ठहरना, रहना, बैठना int.
Wake, to	जागना int. जगाना, t
Walk, to	चलना पैदल चलना, टहलना, घूमना int (take a walk)
Wall	दीवार, दीवाल f
Want, to	चाहना (desire) , माँगना (request)t
Wash; to	धोना, साफ करना t , स्नान करना, गुस्ल करना t (bath)

Watch	घड़ी, जेबघड़ी f
Watch-man	चौकीदार, पहरेदार m
Water	पानी, जल m
We	हम pron.
Weak	कमजोर, निर्बल adj.
Wear, to	पहनना, पहिरना t
Weather	हवा f , मौसम m (season) , आबहवा f (climate)
Weep. to	रोना int ,आँसू गिराना or बहाना t
Weight	तोल, वजन m
Well	कुआ, कुआं m (of water) कुशल, अच्छा m , खैरियत f (in health)
West	पश्चिम, पच्छिम m
Wet	गीला, भीगा adj.
What	क्या, कौन, कितना pron
Wheel	पहिया चक्र m
Whence	जहाँ से, कहाँ से adv.
When	जब, कब adv.
Whenever	जब कभी, जब जब, जिस समय .adv
Whether	या, वा conj.
Which	जो, कौन; कौनसा conj.
Whip	चाबुक, हंटर, कोड़ा m

Whistle	सीटी, f , verb सीटी बजाना t
Who	जो, कौन pron.
Whole	सब, सारा, कुल, तमाम, adj.
Whom	जिसको, (जिसे), किसको (किसे) pron.
Wicked	दुष्ट, पापी adj.
Window	खिड़की f
Wing	पंख, पर m
Wipe	पोंछना t
With	से, (के) साथ. संग, समेत p.p.
Without	(के) बिना, बाहर, परे p.p.
Woman	स्त्री, औरत महिला, नारी f
Wood	लकड़ी f. काठ m
Wool	ऊन m, adj. ऊनी (woollen)
Word	शब्द m
Work	काम कार्य f, परिश्रम m; मेहनत t (hardwork)
Workman	मजदूर कुली m (labourer), कारीगर मिस्त्री m (artisan)
World	संसार जगत m दुनियाँ, पृथ्वी
Worship, to	पूजा करना t
Write, to	लिखना t
Wrong	गलती. भूल f गलत adj.

Y

Yard गज m

Yell, to चिल्लाना int.

Yes हाँ, जी हाँ adv.

Yesterday कल adv.

Yet इस पर भी, तौभी, अबतक adv. (up to this time) —

Your तुम्हारा, आपका, अपना pron.

Young बच्चा m, कम उम्र का; छोटा; युवा, नौजवान adj.

Z

Zeal उत्साह, जोश m

Zero शून्य m

